National Library of Canada
Bibliothèque nationale du Canada

Canadian Theses Service
Service des thèses canadiennes

Ottawa, Canada
K1A 0N4

## NOTICE

The quality of this microform is heavily dependent upon the quality of the original thesis submitted for microfilming. Every effort has been made to ensure the highest quality of reproduction possible.

If pages are missing, contact the university which granted the degree.

Some pages may have indistinct print especially if the original pages were typed with a poor typewriter ribbon or if the university sent us an inferior photocopy.

Reproduction in full or in part of this microform is governed by the Canadian Copyright Act, R.S.C. 1970, c. C-30, and subsequent amendments.

## AVIS

La qualité de cette microforme dépend grandement de la qualité de la thèse soumise au microfilmage. Nous avons tout fait pour assurer une qualité supérieure de reproduction.

S'il manque des pages, veuillez communiquer avec l'université qui a conféré le grade.

La qualité d'impression de certaines pages peut laisser à désirer, surtout si les pages originales ont été dactylographiées à l'aide d'un ruban usé ou si l'université nous a fait parvenir une photocopie de qualité inférieure.

La reproduction, même partielle, de cette microforme est soumise à la Loi canadienne sur le droit d'auteur, SRC 1970, c. C-30, et ses amendements subséquents.

NL-339 (r. 88/04) c

Canada

UNIVERSITY OF ALBERTA

# Studies on the Formation of β-Mannosidic Linkages by Intramolecular Inversion

BY

**Marei Hildegard Erika Griffith**

A thesis submitted to the Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research in partial fulfillment of the requirements for the degree of **Doctor of Philosophy**.

**Department of Chemistry**

Edmonton, Alberta

**Fall 1991**

National Library of Canada
Bibliothèque nationale du Canada

Canadian Theses Service
Service des thèses canadiennes

Ottawa, Canada
K1A 0N4

The author has granted an irrevocable non-exclusive licence allowing the National Library of Canada to reproduce, loan, distribute or sell copies of his/her thesis by any means and in any form or format, making this thesis available to interested persons.

L'auteur a accordé une licence irrévocable et non exclusive permettant à la Bibliothèque nationale du Canada de reproduire, prêter, distribuer ou vendre des copies de sa thèse de quelque manière et sous quelque forme que ce soit pour mettre des exemplaires de cette thèse à la disposition des personnes intéressées.

The author retains ownership of the copyright in his/her thesis. Neither the thesis nor substantial extracts from it may be printed or otherwise reproduced without his/her permission.

L'auteur conserve la propriété du droit d'auteur qui protège sa thèse. Ni la thèse ni des extraits substantiels de celle-ci ne doivent être imprimés ou autrement reproduits sans son autorisation.

ISBN 0-315-70134-X

Canada

UNIVERSITY OF ALBERTA

RELEASE FORM

NAME OF AUTHOR: **Marei Hildegard Erika Griffith**

TITLE OF THESIS: **Studies into the Formation of β-Mannosidic Linkages by Intramolecular Inversion**

DEGREE: **Doctor of Philosophy**

YEAR THIS DEGREE GRANTED: **Fall 1991**

Permission is hereby granted to the University of Alberta Library to reproduce single copies of this thesis and to lend or sell such copies for private, scholarly or scientific research purposes only.

The author reserves all other publication and other rights in association with the copyright in the thesis, and except as hereinbefore provided neither the thesis nor any substantial portion thereof may be printed or otherwise reproduced in any material form whatever without the author's prior written permission.

SIGNED: M. Griffith

PERMANENT ADDRESS:

30 Spyri Strasse

Zurich, Switzerland. CH 8057

DATED: June 5th, 1991

UNIVERSITY OF ALBERTA

FACULTY OF GRADUATE STUDIES AND RESEARCH

The undersigned certify that they have read, and recommend to the Faculty of Graduate Studies and Research for acceptance, a thesis entitled **Studies into the Formation of a β-Mannosidic Linkage by Intramolecular Inversion** submitted by **Marei Hildegard Erika Griffith** in partial fulfilment for the requirements for the degree of **Doctor of Philosophy**.

(Supervisor) O. Hindsgaul

D.R. Bundle

F.M. Pasutto

W.A. Ayer

G. Kotovych

J.C. Vederas

Date June 5/90

**Abstract**

The production of β-D-mannosidic linkages by intramolecular inversion of the 2 position of glucopyranosides was studied using the *p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl group and the anisoyl group as intramolecular nucleophiles. Both residues behaved well in initial model studies using methyl 4,6-O-benzylidene-3-O-acyl-2-O-trifluoromethanesulfonate-β-D-glucopyranoside to provide only the 2 and 3-O-acyl-β-D-mannopyranosides. As expected, the *p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl group was a better nucleophile than the anisoyl group, but it created problems during glycosidation reactions due to protonation of its dimethylamino moiety. While searching for suitable glycosidation conditions, 1,2-orthoacyl fluorides were observed for the first time and characterized by n.m.r. spectroscopy.

When inversion conditions were applied to octyl 4-*O*-benzyl-6-*O*-*t*-butyldiphenylsilyl-3-*O*-acyl-2-*O*-trifluoromethanesulfonate-β-D-glucopyranoside, ring contraction due to 1,2 migration of the ring oxygen was also observed. This side reaction was particularly prevalent for the anisoyl group. The 2-*O*-*p* -N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl-β-D-mannopyranoside obtained from the inversion was glycosidated to provide the octyl 3-*O*-(2-amino-2-deoxy-α-D-mannopyranosyl-)-β-D-mannopyranoside derivative **121**. Due to the limited quantities of β-mannosides obtainable by the inversion method, only a very small amount of this disaccharide could be obtained. Since it was desirable to obtain a larger quantity of this disaccharide to allow enzyme assays, it was also synthesized by an independent method.

The mannosamine residue was introduced into **121** using 3,4,6-tri-*O*-acetyl-2-phthalimido-2-deoxy-α-D-mannopyranosyl bromide. The ring in all 2-phthalimido-2-deoxy-D-mannopyranose derivatives was severely distorted, rendering the assignment of the anomeric configuration by n.m.r. spectrometry

inconclusive. The glycosidation of alcohols by 2-phthalimidomannopyranosyl bromide was therefore investigated using methanol and di-isopropylidene glucose as glycosyl acceptors. In both cases α-mannosidic linkages were formed and furthermore neither ring distortion nor the type of protecting groups employed had much effect on the $^{13}C$ chemical shifts and coupling constants. These nmr data can therefore be used as indicators for the anomeric configuration of the glycosidic linkage in the protected mannopyranosides.

**Acknowledgements :**

I would like to acknowledge my supervisor Dr. Ole Hindsgaul for his excellent support and guidance throughout the years of study, as well as my husband Dr. Lee Griffith, without whose continual support during the many years of study I would not have been able to complete my work. I would also like to thank my children, Kirsten and Meike, for providing entertaining distractions from the rigors of research and my parents, Volker and Marion Fluegge, for guiding me towards this choice of career.

I thank the staff of the n.m.r. laboratory and the microanalytical laboratory for their assistance. I would like to also thank the Alberta Heritage Foundation for Medical Research, the Killam Foundation and the Department of Chemistry for financial support.

## Table of Contents

Introduction.....1
Results and Discussion.....19
Conclusion.....81
Experimental.....84
Bibliography.....159

## List of Tables


Table 1. Chemical Shifts and Coupling Constants for Anomeric Fluorides **54**,**55** and Orthoacyl Fluorides **57**, **58**.....38

Table 2. Chemical Shifts and Coupling Constants for Anomeric Fluorides **62**, **63** and Orthoacyl Fluorides **60** and **61**.....39

Table 3. Ratios of The Orthoacyl Fluorides **60**,**61** to the Anomeric Fluorides **62**,**63** with Varying Fluoride Concentration.....45

Table 4. Summary of Deacetylation Attempts for Compound **67**.....49

Table 5. $^{1}H$ n.m.r. Data for Compounds **108** - **111** in $CDCl_3$ and in $CD_3OD$.....74

Table 6. $^{13}C$ n.m.r. Data for Compounds **109** - **111** in $CDCl_3$ and $CD_3OD$.....75

Table 7. $^{1}H$ and $^{13}C$ n.m.r. Data for Compounds **106**, **117**, **118**, and **121**.....76

## List of Figures

Figure 1. Partial $^{1}H$ n.m.r. and $^{13}C$ n.m.r. Spectra of the Mixture Produced by the Reaction of **59** with DAST.....36

## List of Schemes

Scheme 1. β-Mannoside Formation by Koenigs-Knorr Type Reactions ...5,6

Scheme 2. β-Mannoside Formation by Oxidation/Reduction of the 2 Hydroxyl Group. ....8

Scheme 3. β-Mannoside Formation by Intermolecular Inversion of the 2 Position of β-Glucosides. ....9,10

Scheme 4. Examples of the Formation of Sugar Epimers by Intramolecular Inversion....12

Scheme 5. Possible Mechanism of the Intramolecular Inversion at the 2 Position and Design of the Target Molecule. ....13,14

Scheme 6. Formation of β-Mannosides by Intramolecular Inversion ....16,17

Scheme 7. Possible Pathways to the Observed Products during the Reaction of Reducing Sugars with DAST. ....43

Scheme 8. Possible Mechanism for the Formation of Anomeric Trichloroacetimidates. ....54

## List of Abbreviations

4 A = 4 Angstroms

Ac = acetyl

All = allyl

Aloc = allyloxycarbonyl

Asn = asparagine

Bn = benzyl

tBu = *tert*-butyl

Bue = 2-butenyl

Bz = benzoyl

DAST = diethylaminosulfur trifluoride

DBU = 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene

DMAP = 4-dimethylaminopyridine

DMF = dimethylformamide

Et = ethyl

FAB = fast atom bombardment

gem = geminal

GlcNac = 2-acetamido-2-deoxy-D-glucopyranose

GlcNAcT I = GlcNAc transferase I

GlcNAcT II = GlcNAc transferase II

h.p.l.c. = high performance liquid chromatography

Man = mannose

Me = methyl

Ms = methanesulfonyl

n.m.r. = nuclear magnetic resonance

Ph = phenyl

Phth = phthalimido

p.p.m. = parts per million

r.t. = room temperature

Tf = trifluoromethanesulfonyl

THF = tetrahydrofuran

t.l.c. = thin layer chromatography

triflate = trifluoromethanesulfonate

Ts = p-toluenesulfonyl

UDP = uridine diphosphate

## Introduction :

In recent years the field of carbohydrate chemistry and biochemistry has experienced a resurgence of activity as carbohydrates have become recognized as being involved in many important biochemical processes. Although carbohydrates, especially starch and cellulose, have always been important in the industrial sector of food production, paper, textiles and leather (1), the role of carbohydrates as carriers of biological information is relatively new. Due to the complexity of the structures involved, demonstration of this role was greatly hampered by the lack of separation and analysis techniques, but with the advent of high field n.m.r. instruments, hplc and FAB mass spectrometry, increasingly complicated carbohydrate structures were identified and their involvement in biological processes described.

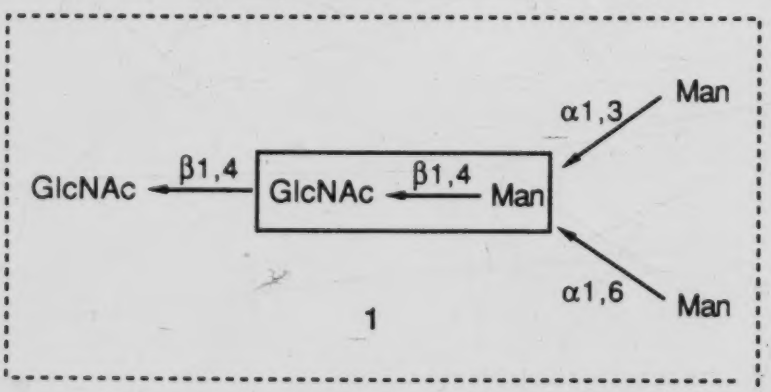
Carbohydrates have now been shown to be involved in diverse biological processes such as the binding and transport of enzymes (2 - 4) and hormones as well as the binding of antibodies (5,6), bacteria (7), toxins (8) and viruses (9,10). They are also involved in the immune response (11) and cell-cell interactions (12 - 15), as for example during embryogenesis and cancer metastasis (16,17).

To allow carbohydrates to act as recognition markers in so many different processes, they must be able to convey a large amount of information and this is indeed possible due to the large number of possible combinations in which they can be assembled. For example, 3 different hexoses can combine to provide 1056 different trisaccharides as compared to only six different tripeptides which can be formed from three different amino acids.

This biologically important versatility in structure makes the investigation of the biological role of carbohydrates quite difficult and an important contribution of the synthetic carbohydrate chemist is therefore to

provide well characterized carbohydrates to more clearly define the function of specific structures or structural components. Eventually the detailed understanding of specific biochemical recognition events will enable us to interpret larger and more complex biological phenomena.

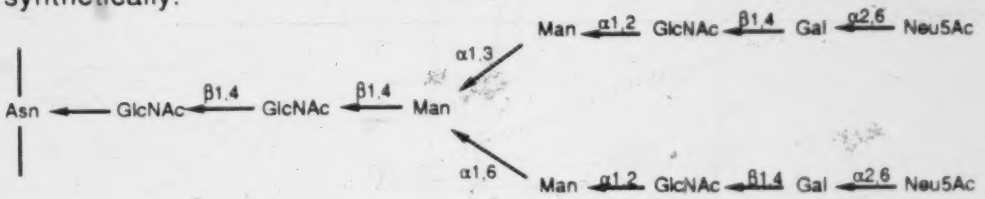
The carbohydrates found on animal cell surfaces are divided into two major groups, those attached to proteins and those linked to lipids. The glycoprotein group is further divided into the O-linked and N- linked oligosaccharides, depending on the type of linkage between the carbohydrate and the protein. In the O-linked glycoproteins, carbohydrates are α-linked via a glycosidic linkage to serine or threonine hydroxyl groups, while in the N-linked glycoproteins they are are attached via a β-N-glycosidic linkage to the amide nitrogen of asparagine residues. These N- linked oligosaccharides are among the most complicated carbohydrate structures found on the cell surface, involving at least 10 to 20 carbohydrate residues. Although there is considerable variation in the structures found among these N-linked oligosaccharides the central core region 1 is identical in all of them (18).




1

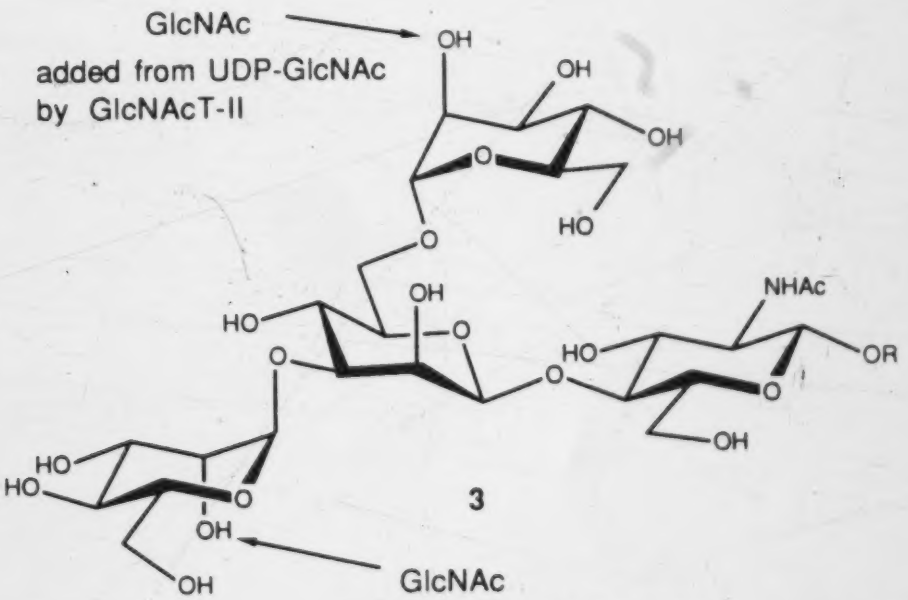
One of the glycosidic linkages in this central core region (see structure 1), the β-D-mannopyranosyl-(1→4)-2-acetamido-2-deoxy-β-D-

glucopyranosyl linkage, has remained particularly difficult to form synthetically.




**2**

The synthesis of analogues or partial structures of complex oligosaccharides such as **2** is synthetically interesting, as di-, tri and tetrasaccharide analogues can serve as substrates and inhibitors for various glycosyltransferases and as ligands for the binding with lectins (19). For example, the tetrasaccharide **3** is a good acceptor for N-acetylglucosaminyl transferases I and II (GlcNAcT I and GlcNAcT II) as indicated. It must be noted that GlcNAcT II acts only after GlcNAcT I has transfered the first GlcNAc residue to the tetrasaccharide **3** (20).




**3**

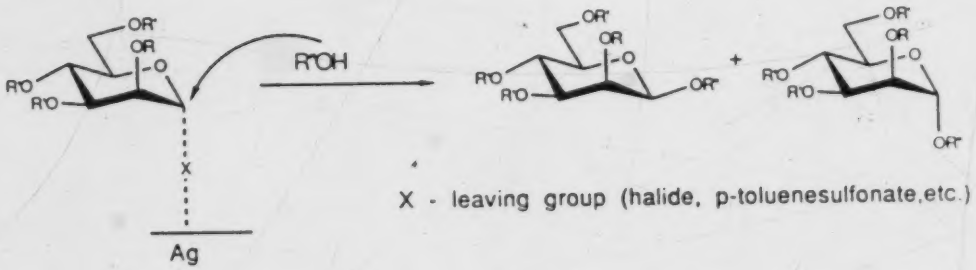
The formation of 1,2-cis glycosidic linkages has been an ongoing problem in carbohydrate chemistry (21) and although satisfactory methods for the formation of cis glycosides with an equatorial substituent at C-2 have been found (22 - 24), the preparation of the corresponding cis glycosides with axial substituents at C-2 is still problematic. To address this problem several methods have been developed over the last 30 years, but most of them fail when applied to large carbohydrate structures.

Scheme 1 depicts an approach to the formation of β-mannosidic linkages, which has been widely applied due to its ease of use. It is based on the traditional Koenigs-Knorr reaction (25) and uses an insoluble silver catalyst to activate the anomeric α-halides by withdrawing the halide anion while simultaneously blocking the α-anomeric side from attack by the alcohol (26). To achieve good results the mannosyl donor has to be protected with a nonparticipating group at the 2-position to prevent neighboring group participation (21,25,27,28). Even then steric factors, as well as the anomeric effect, favor the formation of the α-mannoside. Therefore to achieve the highest possible formation of β-mannoside, both the halide and the alcohol have to be highly reactive to ensure that the glycosidation reaction proceeds under kinetic control (21). The alcohol has to be reactive enough to attack the tight ion-pair,which develops on the way to the oxocarbonium ion, and the halide has to be sufficiently reactive in its α-configuration in order to minimize reaction of the more reactive β-halide, which is always present in small amounts at equilibrium. The formation of β-halides is assisted by the use of soluble catalysts, such as $HgX_2$ salts or silver perchlorate, and therefore insoluble silver salts were chosen for the preparation of β-mannosidic linkages. Although silver oxide can serve as a suitable catalyst, silver silicate (28) and the easily prepared silver zeolite (29) are more reactive and are thus prefered

catalysts. The effect of the reactivity of the alcohol on the yield of β-mannoside can be seen in scheme 1. While the reaction of the mannosyl bromide with the unreactive 4 hydroxyl group of N-acetylglucosamine provided only a moderate amount of β-mannoside (examples **a** and **b**), the use of the more reactive 1,6-anhydro derivative of an N-acetylglucosamine as glycosyl acceptor produced good yields of the desired β-conformers (example **c**).

**Scheme 1 :** β-Mannoside Formation by Koenigs-Knorr Type Reactions

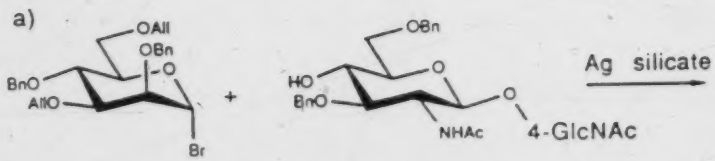
**General :**




X - leaving group (halide, p-toluenesulfonate,etc.)

**Examples :**

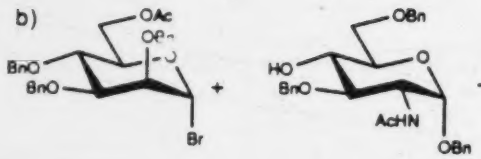
a)




40 % β-glycoside
and 36 % α -glycoside
Ref.: 30

Scheme 1 cont.

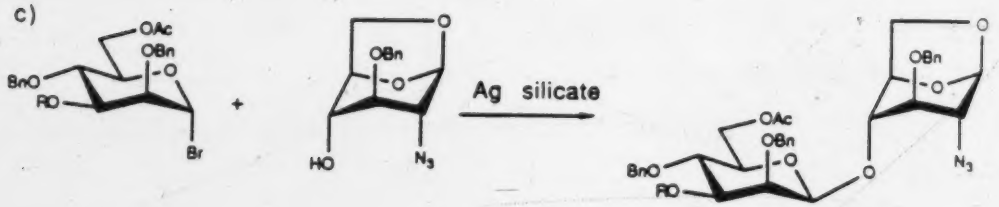
b)




75 % α-glycoside

Ref.: 31

c)




R= Bn 85 % β

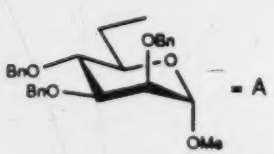
R=Ac 50 % β

R=All 87 % β Ref.: 31,32

d)

| R' | R | R" | % β | % α |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Ms | OTs | Me | 90 | - |
| Ms | OTs | $C_6H_{11}$ | 86 | 14 |
| Ms | $O_3SCH_2CF_3$ | $C_6H_{11}$ | 93 | 7 |
| Ms | OTs | A | 83 | 17 |
| Ms | $O_3SCH_2CF_3$ | A | >90 | - |

Ref.:33,34




= A

Example **c** also demonstrates that even small differences in the reactivity of the bromide have a significant effect on the yield of mannoside produced. Thus the less reactive acetylated bromide provided only 50 % of the β-mannoside as compared to 85 - 87 % for the allylated or benzylated halide. It is this sensitivity towards the reactivity of the starting materials that renders this approach unsuitable for block synthesis, as oligosaccharide halides are usually much less reactive than those derived from monosaccharides (21).

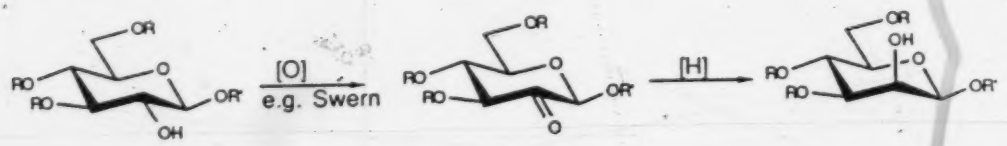
Example **d** in scheme 1 differs from **a**-**c** in that it does not involve an insoluble catalyst, but the principles underlying this approach are similar to the ones described for examples **a** to **c**. The mannosyl donor is the highly reactive anomeric triflate and the requirement for an active glycosyl donor is therefore fulfilled in this approach as well. Instead of using an insoluble catalyst to ensure that the reaction has a large amount of $S_N2$ or ion pair character, the 2 hydroxyl group is protected with a strongly electron withdrawing, nonparticipating group such as the mesyl group. When this glycosyl donor was reacted with highly reactive alcohols, good yields of β-mannosides were obtained. Since only the highly reactive primary hydroxyl group of carbohydrates was used in this approach, it is difficult to judge what results would be obtained if the less reactive secondary hydroxyl groups were used as glycosyl acceptors. To be truly useful in synthesis the method has to provide good yields for most carbohydrate hydroxyl acceptors. The regeneration of the 2-hydroxyl group from the mesylate remains problematic as well and therefore more work is needed if this approach should become competitive with the one described in examples **a** - **c** (33,34).

A different approach to the formation of β-mannosidic linkages involves the formation of a β-glucosidic linkage, followed by the oxidation of the OH-2 to the ketone, which is then stereospecifically reduced to provide the β-

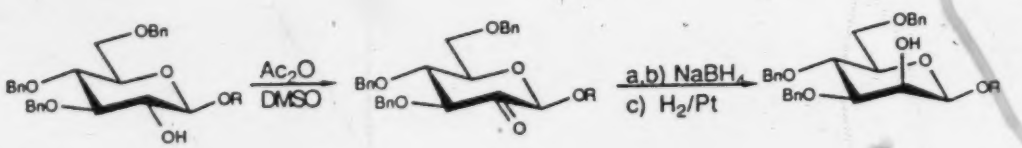
mannoside. This approach is depicted in scheme 2, together with some examples of its synthetic application. The yield of mannosides by this approach seem to be equally good for di and trisaccharides, but the procedure is described as "elaborate" (21) and "laborious" (35) and is therefore not extensively used. The product also contains a free hydroxyl group which must be protected if further synthetic steps are required.

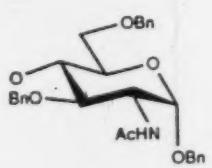
**Scheme 2 :** β-Mannoside Formation by Oxidation/Reduction of the 2 Hydroxyl Group

**General :**

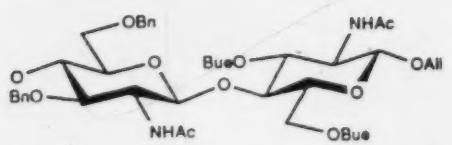



**Examples :**

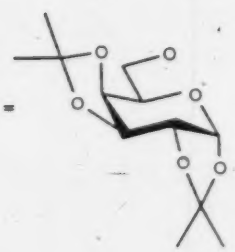



a) RO = 


Ref.: 36 80 - 90 % β-mannoside

b) RO = 


Ref.: 37 72 % β-mannoside

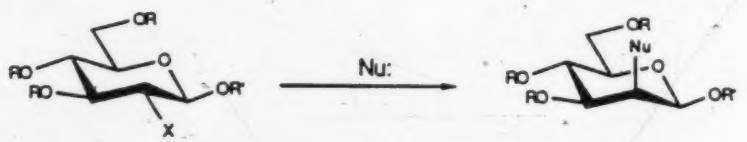
c) RO = 

Ref.: 35,38 90 % β-mannoside

A third method involves the $S_N2$ displacement of a leaving group at C-2 by an external nucleophile. Positions other than the 2 positions have been commonly epimerized using intermolecular displacements (39 - 43) and the approach described in scheme 3 is an extension of this earlier work (44).

**Scheme 3 :** β-Mannoside Formation by Intermolecular Inversion of the 2-Position of β-Glucosides

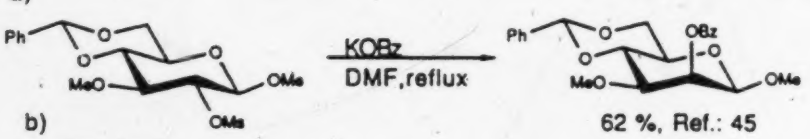
**General :**




X = leaving group, Nu: = nucleophile

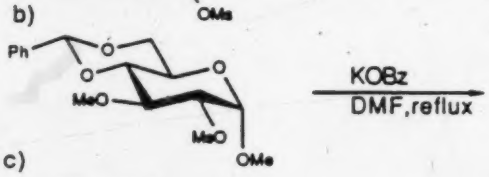
**Examples :**

a)



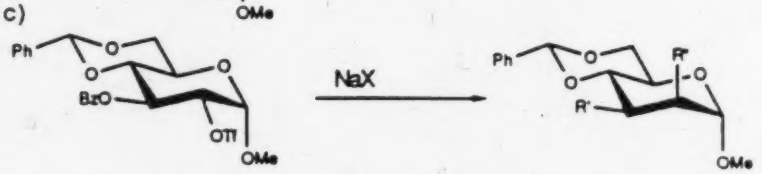

62 %, Ref.: 45

b)




no reaction, Ref.: 45

c)



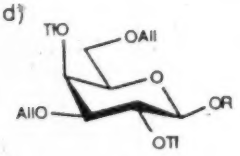

| X | Temp./time | R' | R" | yield % |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| OBz | 80 °C/5 hrs | OBz | OBz | 82 |
| $N_3$ | 80 °C/2 hrs | OBz | $N_3$ | 86 |
| MeS | 0 °C/1 hr | OBz | MeS | 89 |
| PhS | 50 °C/6 hrs | OBz | PhS | 83 |
| MeO | r.t./overnight | —O— | | 85 |

Ref.: 46

The displacement of the 2-O-mesylate of β-glucopyranosides proceeds moderately well to produce 62 % yield of the β-mannopyranoside, but the analogous α-glucopyranoside does not react at all (scheme 3, **a** and **b**). The use of the more reactive triflate as a leaving group can overcome this problem, providing a variety of 2 substituted α-mannosides in greater than 80 % yield (scheme 3, **c**).

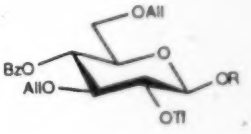
Scheme 3 cont.

d)



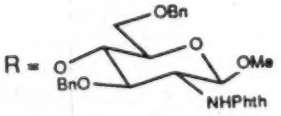

$Bu_4N^+BzO^-$

r.t., 30 min.

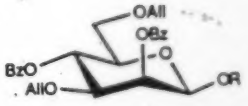



R = Me, Ref. 47

100 °C

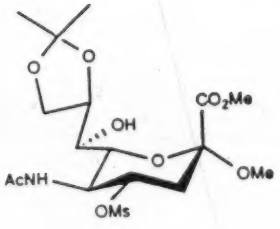



Ref.: 48



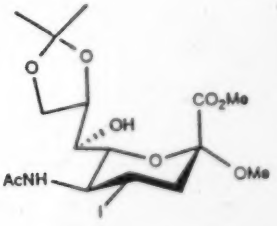

64 %, Ref.: 47
52-55 %, Ref.: 48

e)

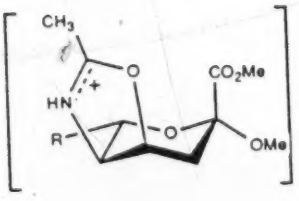


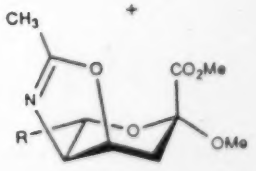

NaI, 100 °C

3 hrs




20 %, with retention




25 %, Ref.: 50

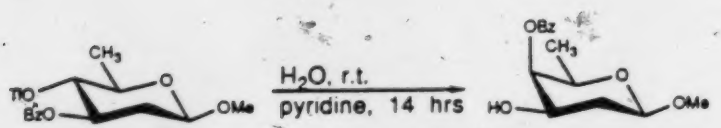
It therefore seems advantageous to use the more reactive triflate in these displacement reactions, especially for the difficult $S_N2$ reactions at the 2 positions of sugar pyranosides. The low reactivity of the 2 position as compared with other positions is demonstrated in example **d**, where double displacement on a 2,4 ditriflate of galactose proceeded in two distinct steps to provide the β-mannopyranoside in 64 % yield. As example **d** shows, these reactions can be applied to structures larger than monosaccharides, but the yields are only moderate and the displacing nucleophile can cross react with protecting groups if no special precautions are taken (47 - 49).

Neighboring groups can also participate during attempted intermolecular displacement reactions. For example, during the inversion of a 4-O-mesylate of sialic acid with sodium iodide (50), the iodide was introduced with retention of configuration and the oxazoline was formed as a byproduct (example **e**).

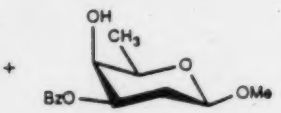
Intramolecular inversions are therefore feasible and many examples, including the use of benzoates as internal nucleophiles (scheme 4) are known.

Based on these precedents, we decided to examine whether intramolecular inversion of the 2 position of β-glucosides could provide a general route to β-mannosides. The use of an "internal" nucleophile might have advantages, as attaching the nucleophile to the β-glucoside molecule might focus its action on the inversion and therefore reduce the possible side reactions, that often arise from the use of external nucleophiles. As well, the effects of the molecular structure (e.g. di- or trisaccharides instead of a monosaccharide) on the reaction rate should be diminished during intramolecular inversion, as the approach path of the internal nucleophile is much more limited.

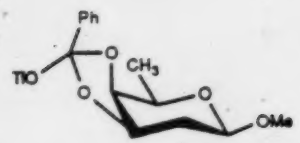
**Scheme 4 :** Examples of the Formation of Sugar Epimers by Intramolecular Inversion



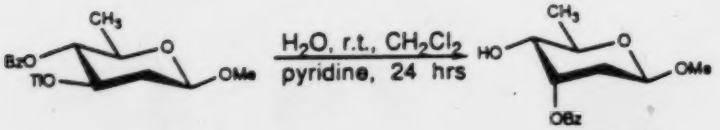

80 %



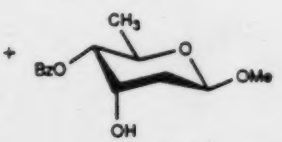

16 %




proposed intermediate which was characterized by n.m.r. spectroscopy




70 %



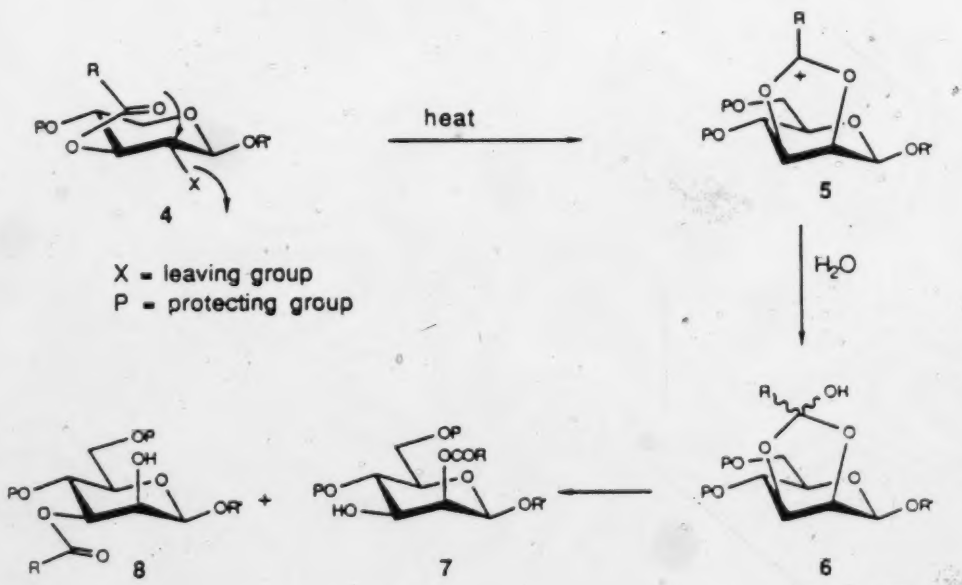

21 %

Ref.: 51 - 53

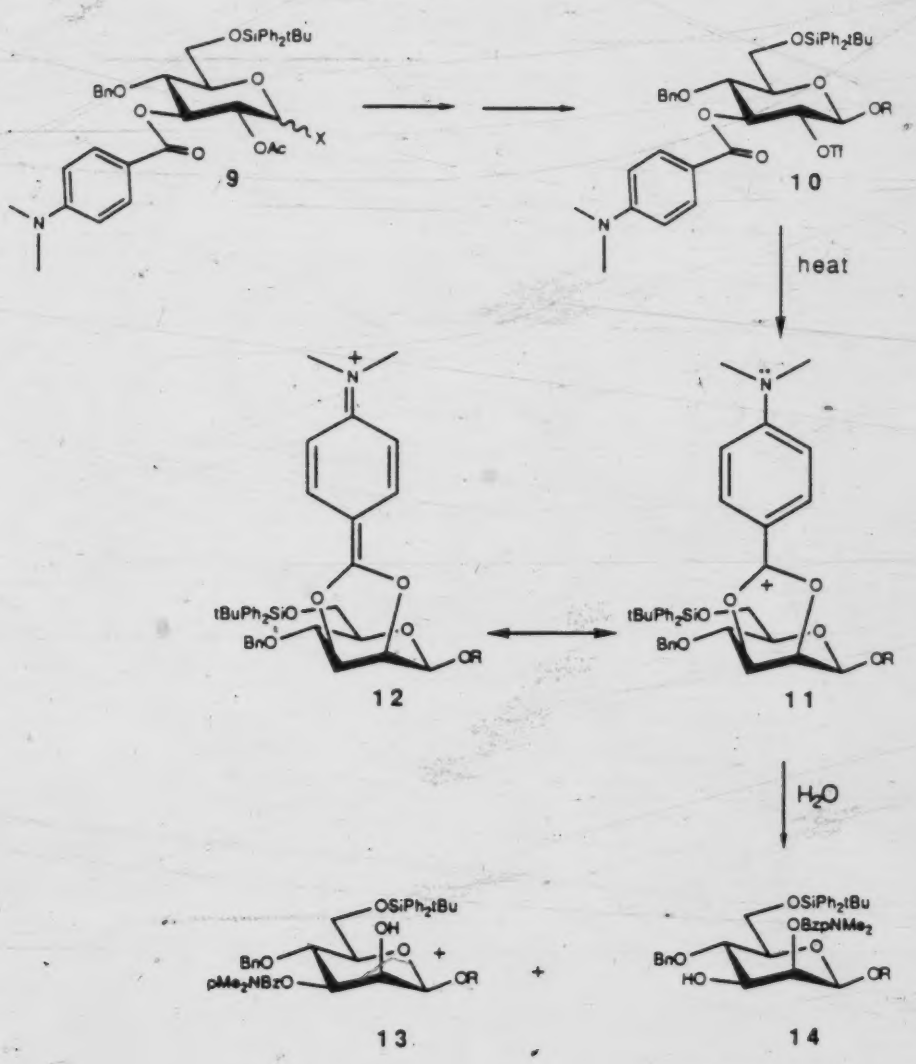
The mechanism of this inversion was expected to proceed as depicted in scheme 5. Upon heating, the activated acyl group would displace the leaving group **X** (structure **4**) to provide the intermediate acyloxonium ion **5**. This cationic species (**5**) should then decompose in the presence of water, via the

orthoacid **6**, to provide the acylated β-mannosides **7** and **8**. The axially acylated structure **7** should predominate substantially as predicted by the results obtained from studies into the acid hydrolysis of orthoesters (33) and also from the results obtained by Binkley et al. (scheme 4, 51,52,53). A preponderant formation of the 2-O-acylated derivative would allow further glycosidation of the unprotected 3-position to provide structural analogues of the complex oligosaccharide **2**. The use of an acyl group as the internal nucleophile would therefore have two desirable effects, the formation of the β-mannosidic linkage and the selective liberation of the 3 hydroxyl group.

**Scheme 5 :** Possible Mechanism of the Intramolecular Inversion at the 2-Position and Design of the Target Molecule



Scheme 5 cont.



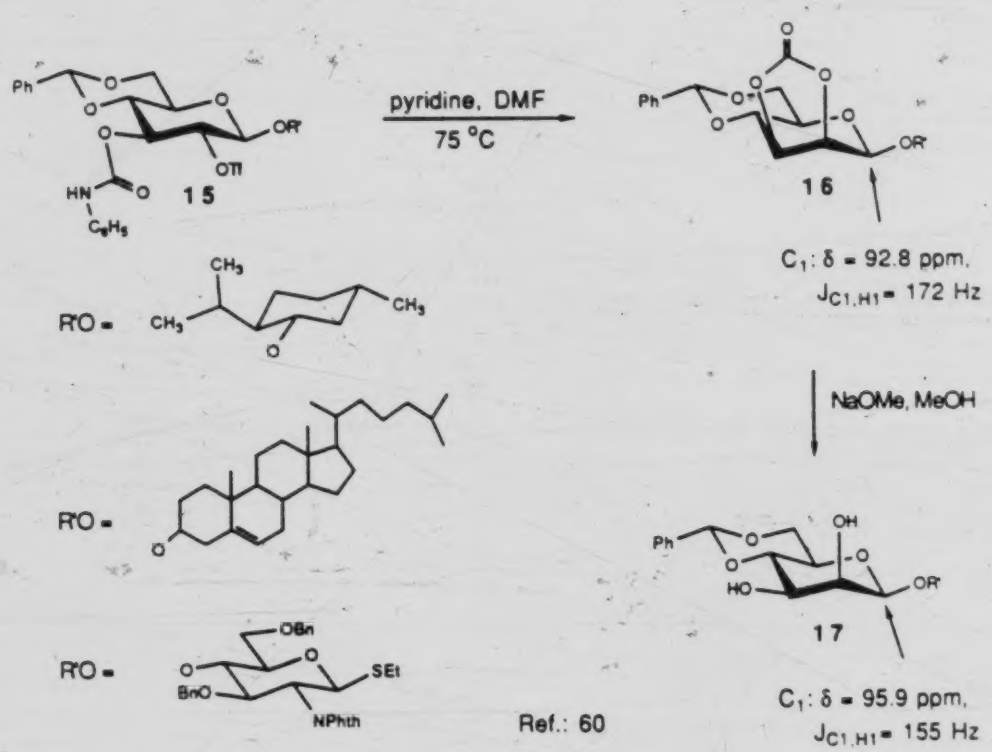

Stabilization of the intermediate acyloxonium ion 5 was expected to facilitate the inversion and therefore the *p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl group was chosen to serve as the intramolecular nucleophile. It was expected to

stabilize the intermediate acyloxonium cation **11** by delocalization of the positive charge into the aromatic ring as shown in **12**. To provide the desired β-*manno* configuration in the product the *p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl group had to be attached to the 3 position of a glucopyranoside. A 2-O-triflate ester was further envisioned as the leaving group since it would be highly reactive and the inversion could therefore proceed under the mildest conditions possible (see scheme 3 a,b,c, 45,46). Protection of O-2 in the glycosyl donor **9** by an acetyl group was expected to allow selective access to this position after glycosidation, as there are a number of procedures available for the selective removal of 2-O-acetyl groups (54 - 58). The 2-O-acetate is also a good participating group during glycosidation reactions thus ensuring that the target glycosyl donor **9** would yield predominantly β-glucosides. Deprotection of O-2 in the β-glycoside, triflation and inversion by heating in the presence of water might then provide the β-mannosides **13** and **14**. To avoid the occurrence of further displacement reactions (59) at the 3 position in the intermediate **11**, the 4 position had to be protected with a persistent non-participating protecting group and so the benzyl group was chosen for this purpose. The O-6 was protected with the *t*-butyldiphenylsilyl group, which by deprotection with fluoride ion (60-62) should allow selective access to that position. Compound **9** would therefore combine all the necessary features to allow the selective synthesis of analogs of the complex oligosaccharide **2**.

About 1 year into this work, Kunz and coworkers (63) published a very similar approach to the formation of β-mannosidic linkages, but they used a phenylurethane group instead of an acyl group as the intramolecular nucleophile (scheme 6). When the phenylurea derivative **15** was heated to 75 °C in DMF and pyridine, the inversion proceeded smoothly to provide about 90 % of the 2,3-O-carbonyl mannoside **16**. The carbonate group could be

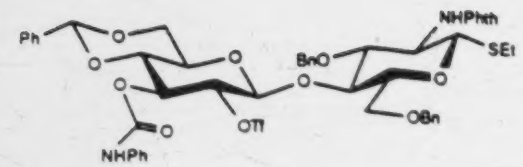
sodium methoxide in methanol to provide the β-mannoside diol **17**. In late 1990 Guenther and Kunz (64) employed this approach in the synthesis of the asparagine linked trisaccharide **18**, where the glucopyranosyl-β-(1→4)-N-acetylglucosamine derivative **19** was inverted to provide the β-mannoside **20**, which was then converted to **17** in an overall yield of 41 %.

**Scheme 6 :** Formation of β-Mannosides by Intramolecular Inversion



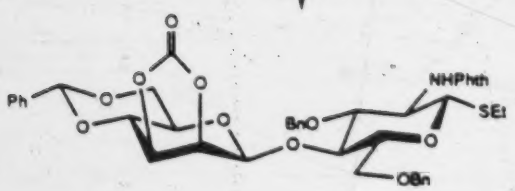

Ref.: 60

Scheme 6 cont.




19

1) DMF, Pyridine, 65°C
2) $Ac_2O$, $H_2O$, dioxane

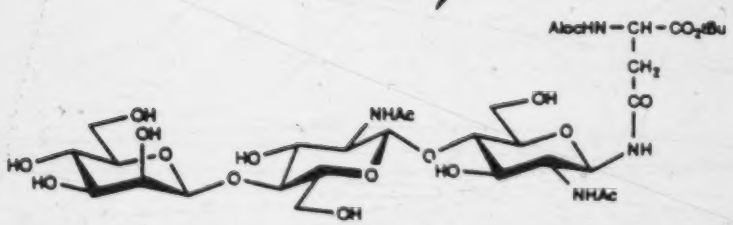



20

NaOMe, MeOH

17

41% overall
Ref.: 61




18

Although the yields obtained in this inversion were good, the removal of the benzylidene group by hydrogenation precluded further glycosidations at the terminal mannose residue, as catalytic hydrogenation also causes debenzylation, hydrogenation of allyl groups and sometimes acyl group

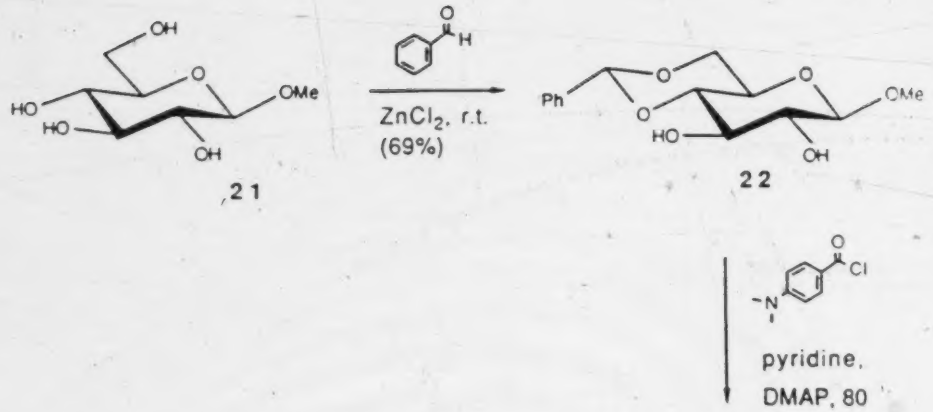
migrations. The removal of the benzylidene by acidic means is a delicate procedure as the labile β-mannosidic bond is prone to hydrolysis or anomerization under those conditions. Furthermore, neither the 2 nor the 3 position of the β-mannoside product was available for selective chain elongation or modification.

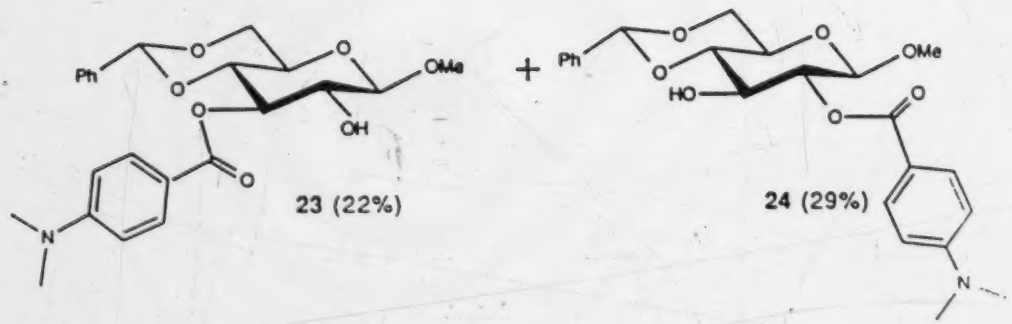
We therefore proceeded to investigate the *p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl approach as it might be more useful for the construction of more diverse oligosaccharide structures.

**Results and discussion :**

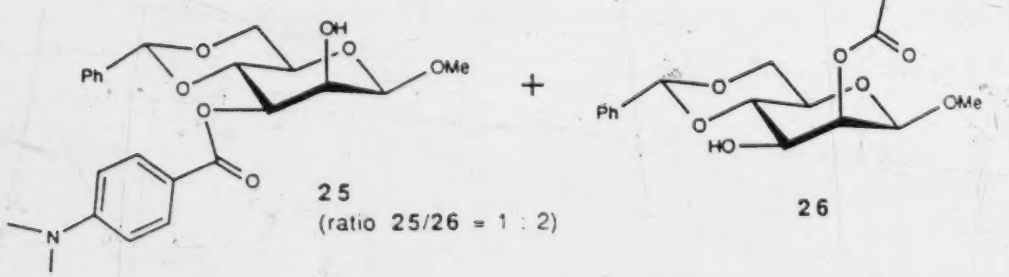
The *p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl group had not been previously described in inversion reactions and its use for such a purpose was therefore first investigated using the easily prepared model compound **23**. The 4,6 - O - benzylidene derivative **22** was prepared from methyl β-D-glucopyranoside (**21**) using benzaldehyde and zinc chloride in 70 % yield according to standard procedures (65,66). The diol **22** was then esterified with *p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl chloride in pyridine at 80 °C to provide the desired 3-O-acylated product **23** in 22% yield together with the 2-O-acylated compound **24** (29 %). The derivative **23** was converted cleanly to the trifluoromethanesulfonate by treatment with trifluoromethanesulfonic anhydride in dichloromethane - pyridine at 0 °C. The triflate reacted upon heating to 60 °C in DMF in the presence of pyridine and water to give the mannosides **25** and **26** in a ratio of about 1 : 2. N.m.r. spectroscopy on the crude material revealed only the two products **25** and **26**. Attempts to cause migration of the axial acyl group in **26** to the equatorial position using pyridine in DMF at 60 °C failed, thus indicating that product **25** is not formed from **26** by migration under the reaction conditions but most likely forms directly from the intermediate orthoacid **6**. Although the result of this preliminary study seemed promising, it was essential to proceed towards a more general mono- or disaccharide system that did not contain a trans-decalin type fused ring system. The presence of two trans-fused six membered rings was thought to decrease the ease of inversion by disfavouring the formation of the orthoacid **6**, which requires flattening of the carbohydrate pyranosyl ring.

To allow selective protection of the 2 and 3 positions on D-glucose, the bromide **27** was converted to the 1,2-O-benzylidene derivative **28** as


OH
HO
HO
OH
OMe
21
ZnCl2, r.t.
(69%)
Ph
HO
OH
OMe
22
Cl
pyridine,
DMAP, 80

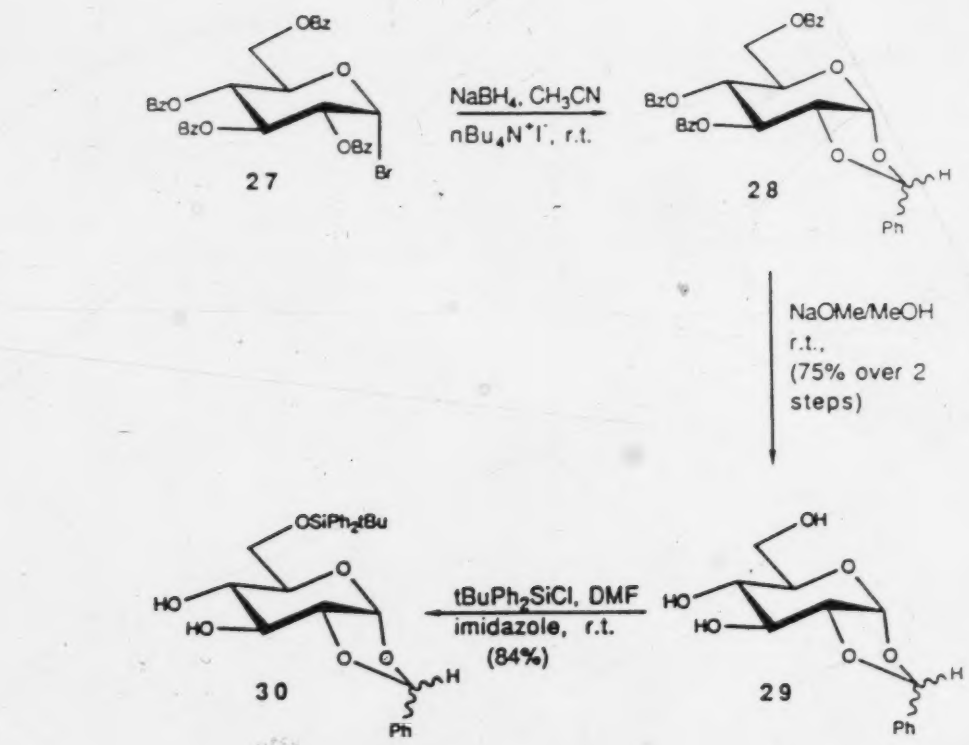

Ph
OMe
OH
23 (22%)
+
Ph
HO
OMe
24 (29%)

1) (CF3SO2)O, 0 °C
pyridine, CH2Cl2
2) DMF, pyridine
H2O, 60 °C


OH
Ph
OMe
25
(ratio 25/26 = 1 : 2)
+
Ph
HO
OMe
26

described by Betaneli et al. (67) using sodium borohydride and tetrabutylammonium iodide at room temperature. Compound **28** was debenzoylated using sodium methoxide in methanol without prior purification to provide the triol **29** in 75 % yield over the two steps. Treatment of **29** with *t*-butyldiphenylchlorosilane and imidazole in DMF provided **30** in 84 % yield (60 - 62). Attempts to generate the 3-O-*p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl derivative **31** in any significant yield by acylation with *p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl chloride and DMAP in pyridine failed because the reaction proceeded only very slowly at room temperature. Warming to 50 °C did accelerate the reaction, but also caused some decomposition, thus making further temperature increases impossible. Under these conditions the 3-O-acyl product **31** was formed together with the 4-O-acylated and some diacylated product in a ratio of about 8 : 2 : 1. Earlier studies on the selective acylation of the triol **29** using dibutyltin oxide had led to a preponderant formation of 6-O-acylated and 3,6-di-O-acylated products and it was therefore thought that after protection of the 6 position, dibutyltin oxide might favour the formation of **31**. Thus **30** was refluxed with dibutyltin oxide in toluene under azeotropic water removal for 1 - 2 hours.Treatment with *p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl chloride and triethylamine in dioxane at room temperature then afforded **31** in 61 % yield together with a small amount of diacylated product (68 - 70).

When benzylation of the 4 position of **31** using benzyloxy-2,2,2-trichloroacetimidate and trifluoromethanesulfonic acid (71) was attempted no reaction was observed. The surprising inertness of **31** to the acidic reaction conditions was attributed to the possible protonation of the dimethylaminobenzoyl group by the protic acid, rendering the positively charged compound inert to further approach by a positive benzylating agent.

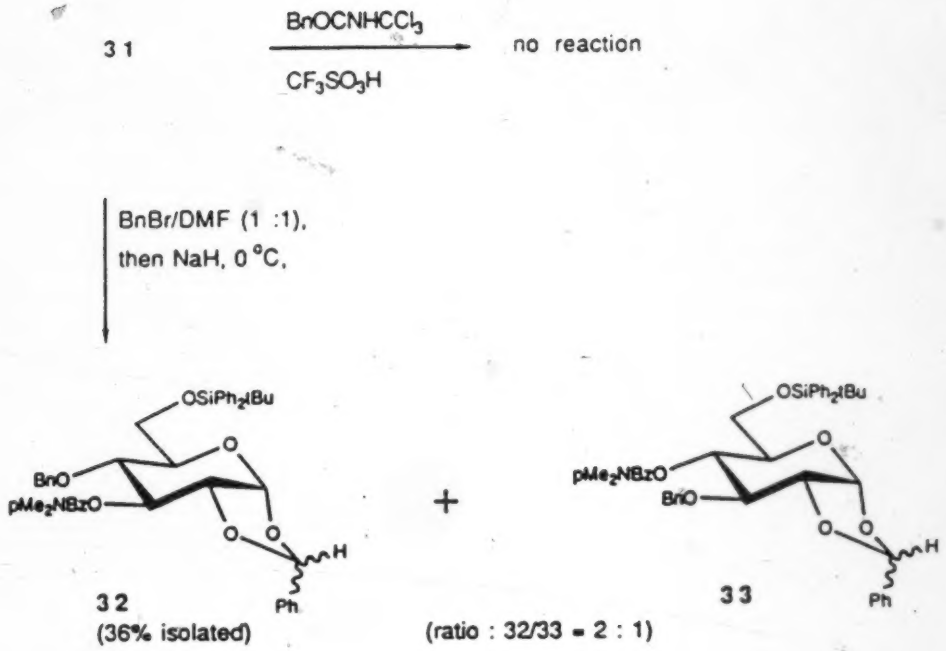

OBz
BzO
BzO
OBz
Br
27
NaBH4, CH3CN
nBu4N+I-, r.t.
28
Ph
NaOMe/MeOH
r.t.,
(75% over 2
steps)
OSiPh2tBu
HO
30
tBuPh2SiCl, DMF
imidazole, r.t.
(84%)
OH
29
1) nBu2SnO,
toluene, reflux
2)
Cl
, Et3N,
dioxane,
(61%)
31

Boron trifluoride etherate was therefore substituted for the trifluoromethane sulfonic acid, but under these conditions **31** decomposed.

Migration of acyl groups under basic benzylation conditions is a common occurrence (72). Basic benzylation conditions now had to be considered however, and it was hoped that migration would not be a problem in this case since trans migrations of acetyl groups can often be avoided by using cold temperatures. The much less reactive *p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl group should migrate even slower than an acetate group. However, upon treatment of **31** with 4 equivalents of benzyl bromide and excess of sodium hydride in DMF, extensive migration took place and both **32** and **33** were formed in a ratio of about 1 : 1.

Flattening of the pyranose ring in **31**, as indicated by the coupling constants ($J_{2,3}$= 3.0 Hz, $J_{3,4}$= 2.8 Hz), brings the 3 and 4 hydroxyl groups into closer proximity and thus eliminates the disfavouring factor for the trans-migration. Later results also indicated that the 3 position of **31** is quite sterically hindered, which might also allow migration to compete with benzylation under these conditions. The ratio of **32** to **33** could only be improved by increasing the amount of benzyl bromide, thus enhancing the rate of the bimolecular reaction over the intramolecular migration. Using benzyl bromide : DMF (1 : 1) as the solvent, **32** and **33** were formed as the only products in a 2 to 1 ratio, but only 36 % of **32** could be obtained in pure form from this mixture due to comigration of the products upon chromatography.

The above benzylation conditions were useful for small scale reactions, but the large amount of benzyl bromide present in the reaction mixture severely complicated the chromatography when the reaction was scaled up even to a one gram scale. After three large columns failed to provide more than

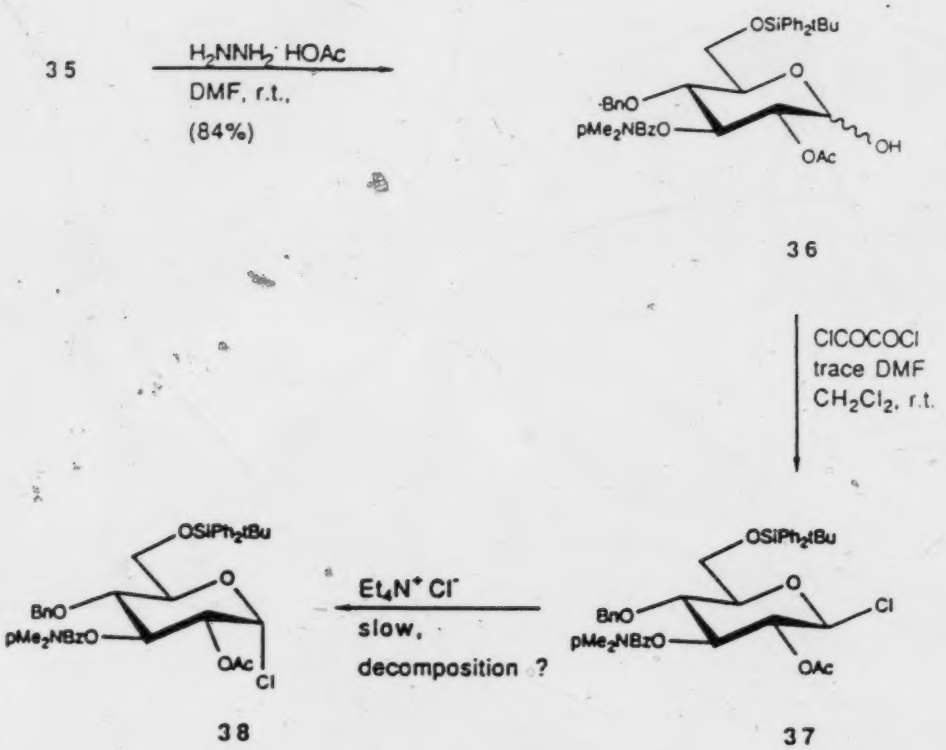

31
BnOCNHCCl3
CF3SO3H
no reaction
BnBr/DMF (1 :1),
then NaH, 0 °C,
OSiPh2tBu
BnO
pMe2NBzO
O
H
Ph
32
(36% isolated)
+
33
(ratio : 32/33 = 2 : 1)
90% CF3CO2H,
CH3CN, 0 °C, (96%)
or
90% CF3CO2H,
CH2Cl2, 0 °C, (90%)
OH
34
Ac2O, DMAP
CH2Cl2, pyridine
r.t.,
(96%)
OAc
35

about 10% of pure product, it was obvious that the benzyl bromide had to be removed somehow prior to chromatography. Conversion of benzyl bromide to benzyl alcohol by hydrolysis with water was slow and removal of the resulting benzyl alcohol by stirring with aluminum oxide was not efficient. Benzyl bromide reacted however exothermically with pyridine or a solution of pyridine in dichloromethane to give the water soluble N-benzylpyridinium bromide salt (73).

Isolation of **32** could be simplified therefore by diluting the reaction mixture with dichloromethane, extracting with water to remove all sodium hydride, then drying and addition of pyridine. Two to twenty four hours later, depending upon the dilution, all the benzyl bromide had reacted and the solution was re-extracted with water to remove the pyridinium salt. The sodium hydride was removed first to avoid the potential formation of an ylid of the pyridinium salt which might cause side reactions. Removal of the benzyl bromide by this procedure did not affect the products and large scale reactions could thus be executed successfully.

The 1,2-O-benzylidene group in **32** was easily removed using 90 % aqueous trifluoroacetic acid in either acetonitrile or dichloromethane to provide **34** in over 90 % yield (67). Compound **32** reacted much faster than 1,2-O-benzylidine-3,4,6-tri-O-benzoyl-β-D-glucopyranoside **28** (10 minutes versus 2 hours), which indicates that **32** is much more electron rich than the tribenzoyl derivative and thus formation of the anomeric carbocation is much easier.

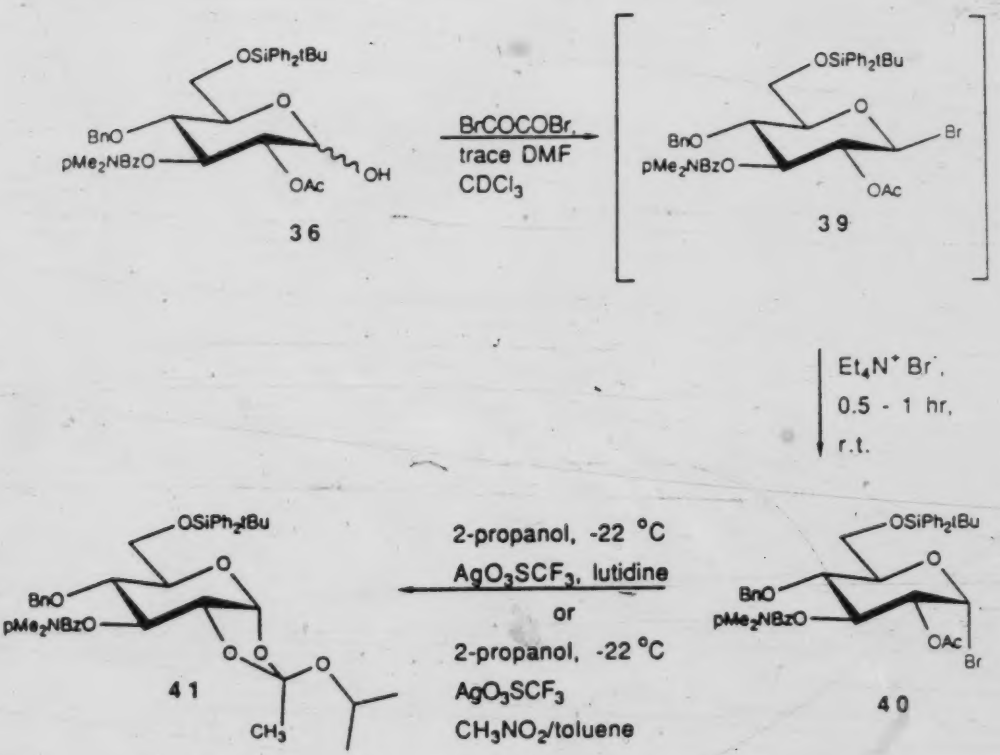
Acetylation of **34** to **35** proceeded smoothly in 96 % yield using acetic anhydride and DMAP in pyridine. Selective removal of the anomeric acetate (74) in **35** was readily achieved using hydrazine acetate in DMF at room temperature providing **36** in 84 % yield.

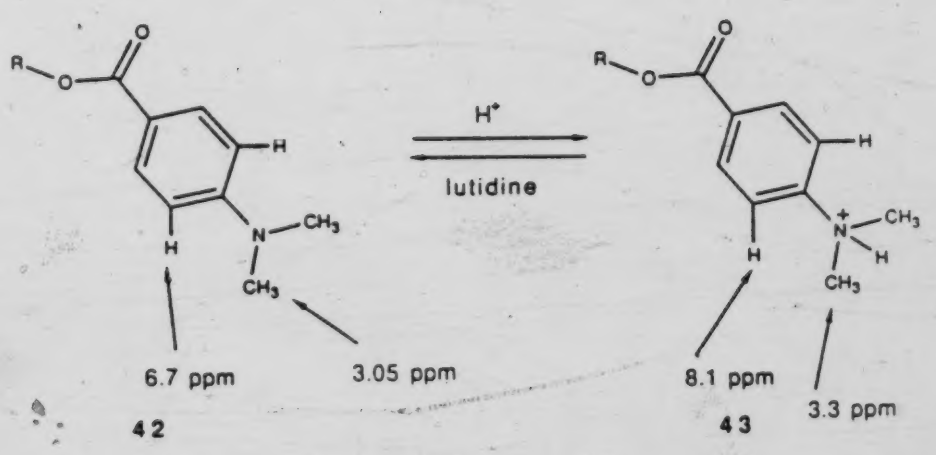



During the transformation of **36** into the glycosyl chloride **38** using oxalyl chloride and trace DMF (75) in dichloromethane extensive gas evolution was observed, but t.l.c showed only the starting material **36**. The reaction was thus performed in deuterated chloroform and followed by n.m.r. spectroscopy. The spectra revealed the presence of only one compound with a β-anomeric configuration which was thought to be the β-glucopyranosyl chloride **37** ($\delta$ = 5.376 p.p.m., d, $H_1$, $J_{1,2}$=8.5 Hz). Chloride **37** did not react when it was used under standard glycosidation conditions (silver

trifluoromethanesulfonate, ROH) (76,77), but decomposed under aqueous work up conditions. The inertness towards glycosylation in contrast to its extreme lability towards water was extremely puzzling and shed doubt on the presence of an anomeric chloride. To investigate whether the compound formed by the reaction of **36** with Vilsmeyer's reagent was indeed the chloride **37**, tetraethylammonium chloride was added to promote what is usually a rapid anomerization of **37** to the α-chloride **38.** Little, if any, rearrangement took place within 2 to 3 days and the reaction was accompanied by what seemed to be extensive decomposition. The failure to rearrange the product to the α-chloride cast even more doubt on whether the β-chloride **37** had indeed formed. It was therefore decided to try to transform **36** into the anomeric bromide using oxalyl bromide/DMF. Initially the n.m.r. spectra showed again the formation of a β-compound which was spectroscopically very similar to the one formed with oxalyl chloride ($\delta$ = 5.578 p.p.m., d, $H_1$, $J_{1,2}$ = 8.5 Hz). This compound seemed to decompose after several hours providing some α-bromide **40** ($\delta$ = 6.642 p.p.m., d, $H_1$, $J_{1,2}$= 4 Hz) and other compounds whose nature could not be identified from the crude spectral data. Thirty minutes to one hour after the addition of tetraethylammonium bromide, however, the mixture had cleanly transformed into the α-bromide **40**. This result suggested that the β-compounds formed initially in both reactions were indeed the β-chloride **37** and β-bromide **39**, even though they behaved rather strangely.

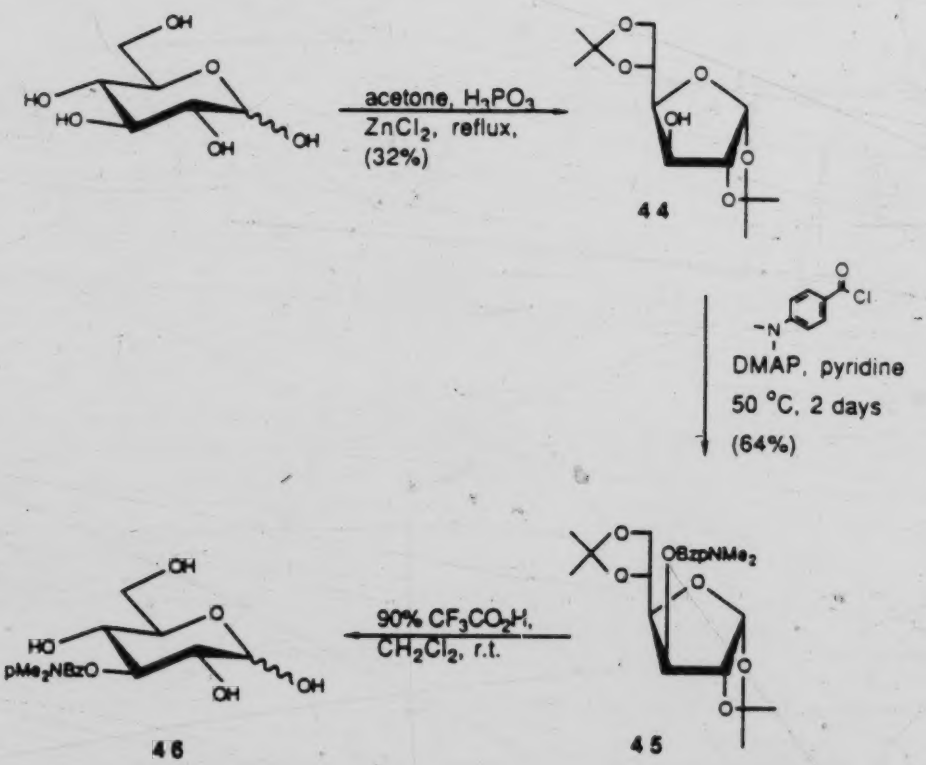
β-Bromides are usually not observed unless special conditions such as low temperatures are applied and an explanation for the abnormal behavior observed in this case had to be found. Careful reexamination of the spectra obtained from the crude products of both reactions showed that there was a significant downfield shift in the methyl proton and ajacent phenyl ring proton signals of the *p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl group in **37** and **39**.


OSiPh2tBu
BnO
pMe2NBzO
OAc
OH
36
BrCOCOBr,
trace DMF
CDCl3
OSiPh2tBu
BnO
pMe2NBzO
Br
OAc
39
Et4N+ Br-,
0.5 - 1 hr,
r.t.
OSiPh2tBu
BnO
pMe2NBzO
CH3
41
2-propanol, -22 °C
AgO3SCF3, lutidine
or
2-propanol, -22 °C
AgO3SCF3
CH3NO2/toluene
OSiPh2tBu
BnO
pMe2NBzO
OAc
Br
40


R
O
H
H
N
CH3
CH3
6.7 ppm
3.05 ppm
42
H+
lutidine
8.1 ppm
3.3 ppm
43

This shift was attributed to protonation of the dimethylamino group under the acidic reaction conditions (see structures **42** and **43**). Addition of lutidine to the reaction mixture confirmed this interpretation by causing the signals to return to their normal chemical shifts. It was therefore understandable why the β-chloride had showed inertness towards glycosidation, while decomposing instantly with water. The glycosidation reactions are highly acidic and protonation of the dimethylamino group should occur. Having already one positive charge in the molecule, introduction of a second one at the anomeric center should be hampered and thus glycosidation should proceed slowly or not at all. On the other hand addition of water into the reaction mixture should cause rapid transfer of the proton from the dimethylaminobenzoyl group (pKa of the protonated methyl or ethyl p-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoates = 2.30 relative to water, (78)) to the stronger base water and the now unprotonated β-chloride **37** decomposes to the anomeric alcohol **36**.

It was possible to purify the α-bromide **40** by aqueous extraction and the bromide was therefore used instead of the β-chloride in the subsequent glycosylation reactions. When **40** was reacted with 2-propanol and silver trifluoromethanesulfonate in the presence of excess lutidine the orthoester **41** was formed as expected under the basic conditions. Even without the addition of lutidine, however, the orthoester **41** was formed as the only product. It was, therefore, obvious that the glycosidation of this glucose derivative would not be facile and although there was indication that the *p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl group caused most of the trouble in these reactions, steric effects due to the *t*-butyldiphenylsilyl group could not be excluded. A simple analogue (**50**) was therefore prepared in five steps starting from glucose to help clarify the origins of the glycosidation problem. D-Glucose was treated with zinc dichloride and phosphoric acid in acetone (79) to provide

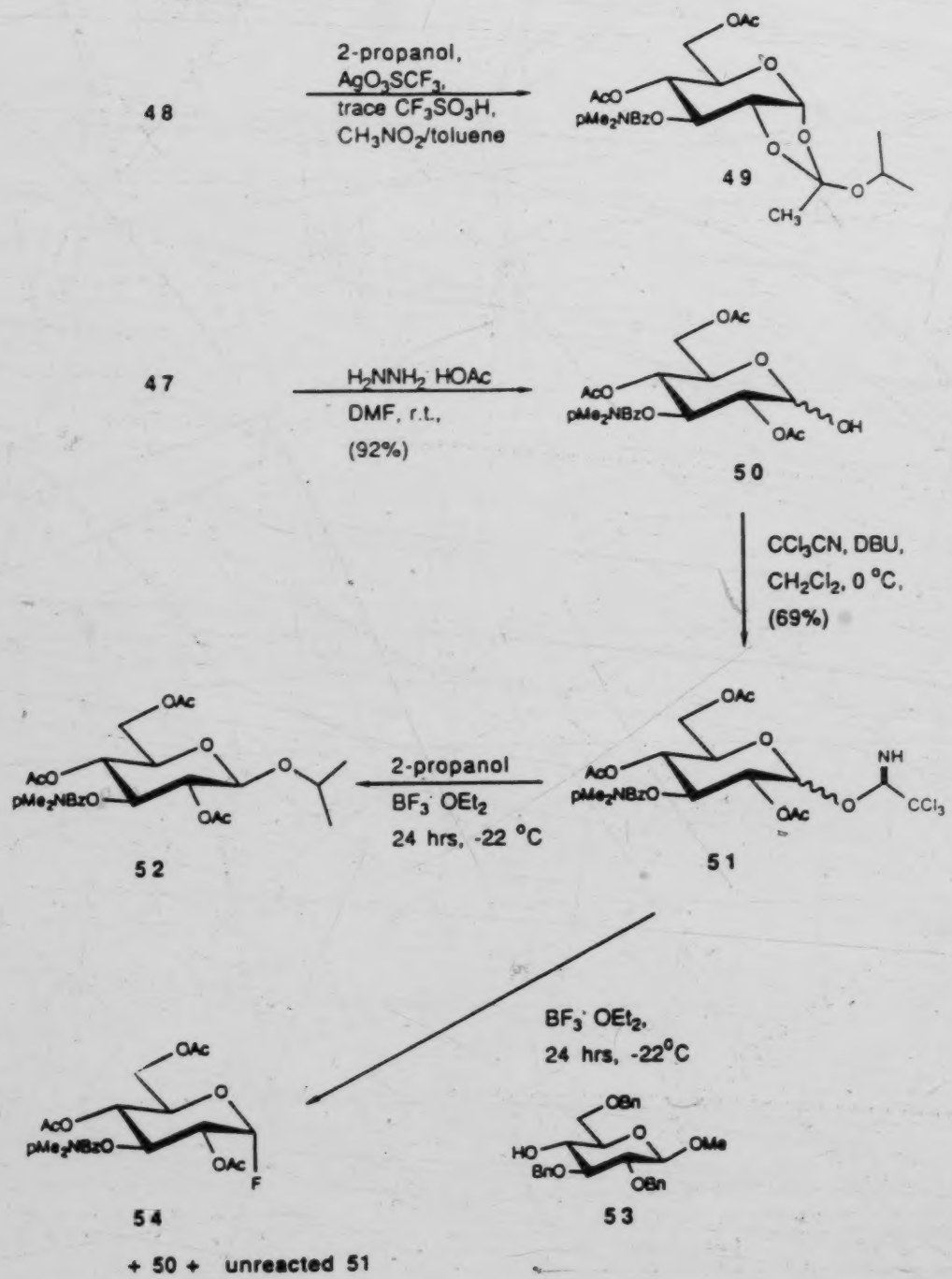

acetone, $H_3PO_4$
$ZnCl_2$, reflux,
(32%)
DMAP, pyridine
50 °C, 2 days
(64%)
90% $CF_3CO_2H$,
$CH_2Cl_2$, r.t.
$Ac_2O$, DMAP
pyridine, r.t.
(84% over 2 steps)
30% HBr/HOAc,
10% $Ac_2O$, 0 °C

44 46 45 47 48

the di-O-isopropylidene derivative **44.** The now accessible 3-hydroxyl group was acylated using *p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl chloride and DMAP in pyridine at 50 °C to provide the compound **45** (64 %). Removal of the isopropylidene protecting group of **45** in 90 % aqueous trifluoroacetic acid at room temperature (79) gave **46**, which was immediately acetylated using acetic anhydride in pyridine/DMAP to yield **47** in an overall yield of 84 % (80). The acetate **47** was then transformed into the anomeric bromide **48** by hydrogen bromide in glacial acetic acid. This procedure was chosen instead of the two step sequence using oxalyl bromide as it provided the α-bromide directly and could therefore be monitored more easily by t.l.c.

The bromide **48** was then reacted again with 2-propanol using silver trifluoromethanesulfonate (75,77) as was done with **40**. Under all conditions employed only the orthoester **49** was produced. Even when a trace of trifluoromethanesulfonic acid was added to ensure an excess of protons over dimethylamino groups (which might have provided an internal base that prevented the rearrangement of the orthoester), only orthoester was observed. The resistance of the orthoester to rearrangement, even in the presence of excess acid, is again most likely due to the protonation of the dimethylaminobenzoyl group which prevents the introduction of another positive charge into the molecule.

To avoid the protonation problem altogether, a glycosidation method was sought that did not involve the generation of protic acids. Anomeric trichloroacetimidates are commonly activated using boron trifluoride etherate (81), which might be less prone to interact with the dimethylamino group and therefore not deactivate the glycosylating agent or the intermediate orthoester. The diacetate **47** was therefore selectively deacylated at the anomeric position using hydrazine acetate in dry DMF (74) to provide **50**

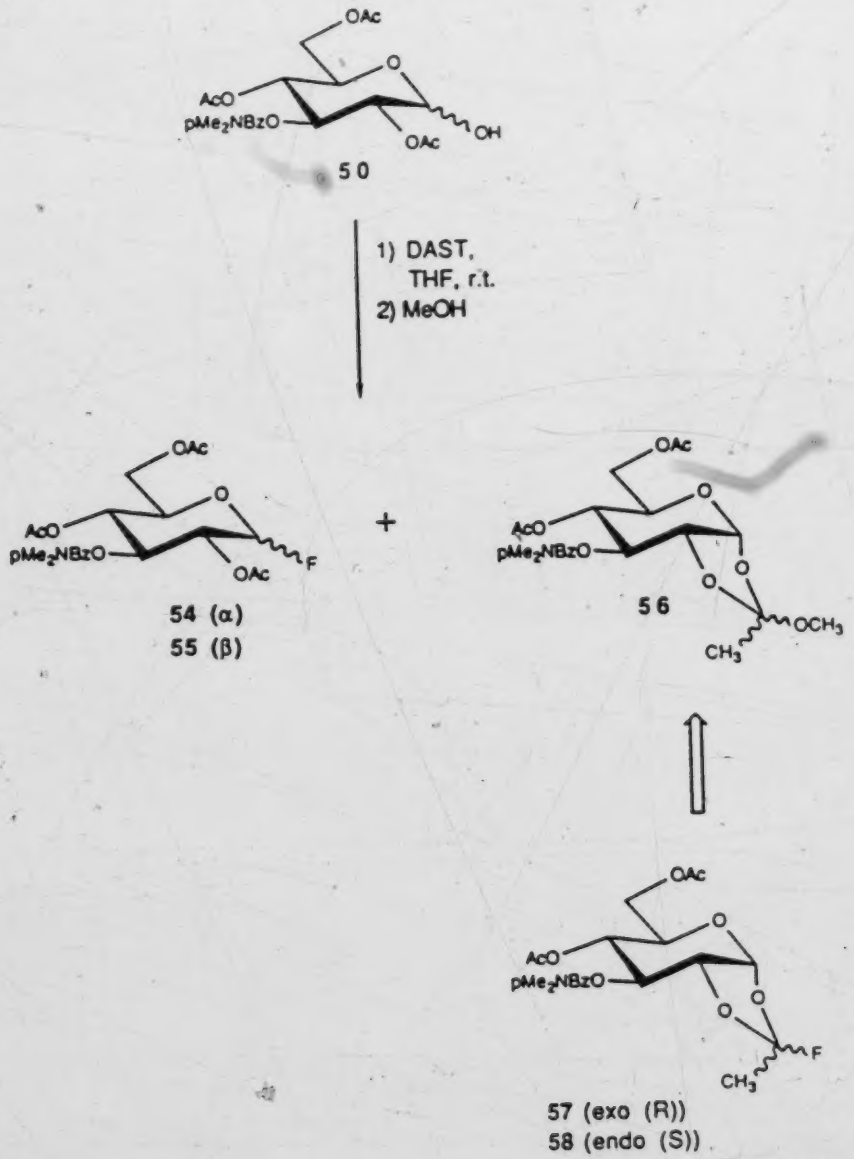

48
2-propanol,
$AgO_3SCF_3$,
trace $CF_3SO_3H$,
$CH_3NO_2$/toluene
49
47
$H_2NNH_2 \cdot HOAc$
DMF, r.t.,
(92%)
50
$CCl_3CN$, DBU,
$CH_2Cl_2$, 0 °C,
(69%)
2-propanol
$BF_3 \cdot OEt_2$
24 hrs, -22 °C
52
51
$BF_3 \cdot OEt_2$,
24 hrs, -22°C
54
53
+ 50 + unreacted 51

in 92 % yield, which was then converted to the imidate **51** in 69 % yield using 2,2,2-trichloroacetonitrile and DBU (81).

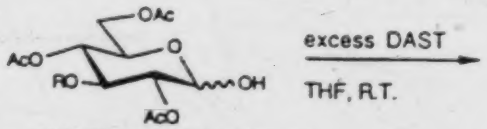
The imidate could be successfully employed in the glycosidation of 2-propanol using boron trifluoride etherate as the catalyst, to provide only the isopropyl β-glycoside **52** as determined by n.m.r. spectroscopy. All attempts to glycosidate the hindered 4-hydroxyl group of the alcohol **53** failed, however, providing only hydrolysis products and a small amount of a compound that seemed to be the α-anomeric fluoride **54**. Alcohol **53** had been previously synthesized from the methyl 2,3-di-O-benzyl-4,6-O-benzylidene-β-D-glucopyranoside by reaction with sodium cyanoborohydride (72,82)

To clearly identify the nature of the minor compound isolated in the above reaction as the α-anomeric fluoride, the anomeric fluoride **54** was synthesized separately to allow comparison of the product n.m.r. spectra. There are many methods available for the preparation of anomeric fluorides (83 - 85) and one of the most direct remains the reaction of reducing sugars with diethylaminosulfur trifluoride (DAST). The reducing sugar **50** was thus treated with DAST in tetrahydrofuran at 0 ºC according to the procedure of Ogawa et al.(86). After rapid initial progress the reaction stopped at about 50 % fluoride formation and neither further addition of DAST nor increasing the temperature to 22 ºC resulted in any further reaction. The reaction was quenched by addition of methanol and, surprisingly, t.l.c. now showed only one spot. It was therefore assumed that the fluorides had formed quantitatively in solution, but hydrolysed on the plate, as is often seen during anomeric chloride and bromide formation. This type of behavior was unexpected for the much more stable anomeric fluorides but no other logical explanation was apparent. Surprisingly the n.m.r. spectrum of the crude product mixture showed not only signals for the the α and β fluorides **54** and **55**, but also those of the methyl

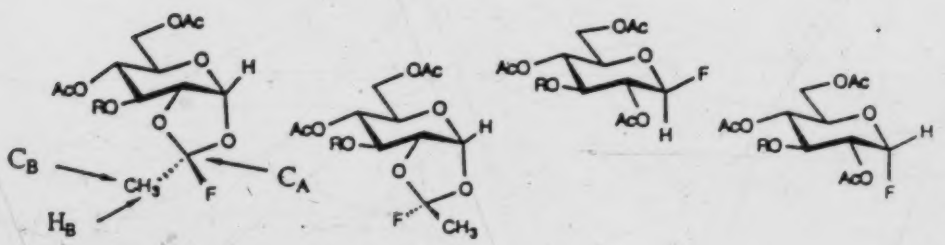
orthoacetates **56**, which must clearly have been formed after the addition of methanol. Under the methanolysis reaction conditions, the orthoester was most likely formed from the intermediate orthoacyl fluorides **57** and **58**.



Orthoacyl halides were thought to be highly unstable and previously had been observed only transiently at low temperatures (87,88) and their existences had not been considered initially as a possible explanation for the strange reaction results.



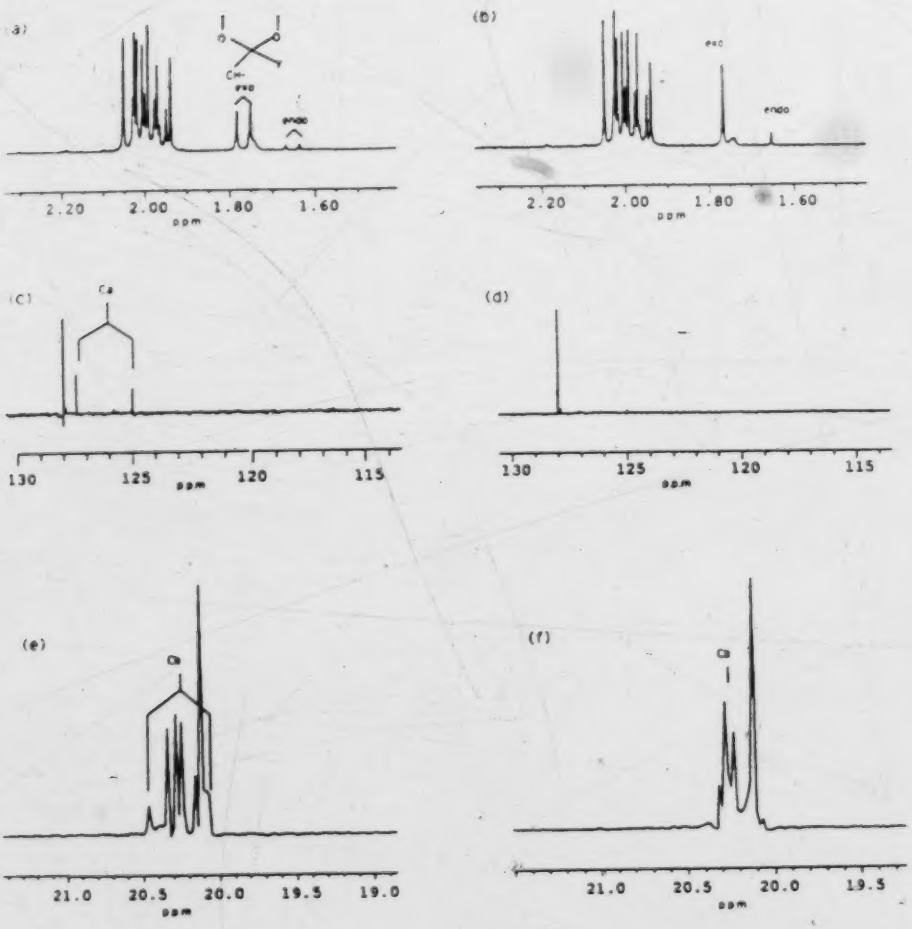

50 : R = p - N,N-Dimethylaminobenzoyl
59 : R = Acetyl




| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| (R = $pMe_2NBz$) | 57 (47%) | 58 (5%) | 55 (27%) | 54 (21%) |
| (R = Acetyl) | 60 (41%) | 61 (6%) | 62 (38%) | 63 (15%) |

Orthoacyl halides are postulated intermediates in the formation of anomeric halides involving neighboring group participation (89) and the opportunity to observe and characterize a stable member of this species could not be passed up. The reaction of 50 with DAST was repeated in an n.m.r. tube using deuterated THF as the solvent, and indeed a new species was found that showed the characteristic coupling constants for a distorted pyranose ring

**Fig. 1** Partial $^{1}H$ and $^{13}C$-n.m.r. Spectra of the Mixture Produced by the Reaction of **59** with DAST




recorded on a 400 MHz instrument; $C_a$ indicates C-2 of the dioxolane ring $C_b$ indicates the methyl group attached to the C-2 of the dioxolane ring

(a) $^{1}H$ - n.m.r. spectra : without decoupling; acetate region

(b) with $^{19}F$ decoupling at the orthoacyl fluoride; acetate region

(c) $^{13}C$ - n.m.r. spectra : without $^{19}F$ decoupling; $C_a$ region

(d) with $^{19}F$ decoupling at the orthoacyl fluoride: $C_a$ region; decoupling power was not sufficient to coalesce the peaks

(e) without $^{19}F$ decoupling; $C_b$ region

(f) $^{13}C$ - n.m.r. spectrum with $^{19}F$ decoupling at the orthoacyl fluoride; $C_b$ region

as seen generally for 1,2-O-orthoesters ($J_{12}$= 5.5 Hz, $J_{23}$= 2.8 Hz, $J_{34}$= 2-3 Hz). Addition of methanol to this mixture led to quantitative formation of the orthoesters from the orthoacyl fluorides, while the anomeric fluorides were not effected in any way (by ratios of n.m.r. product signals).

To investigate whether the unusual properties of the *p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl group had any influence on the formation of these orthoacyl fluorides, 2,3,4,6-tetra-O-acetyl-D-glucopyranose **59** was also reacted under the same conditions and similar results were obtained. The acetate region (1.5 - 2.1 ppm) of the spectra showed two doublets at 1.767 p.p.m. ($J_{H,F}$ = 12.5 Hz) and 1.652 ppm ($J_{H,F}$ = 13.0 Hz) in a ratio of about 9 : 1. To establish whether these signals corresponded to the fluorine coupled methyl protons (H-B) of the orthoacyl fluorides, fluorine decoupled proton spectra and fluorine decoupled $^{13}C$ spectra were obtained for the fluorides **60** to **63**. The partial spectra presented in figure 1 clearly show the coupling between fluorine and the methyl protons in spectra **a** and **b** and between fluorine and the methyl carbon (40 Hz) in spectra **e** and **f** as well as the large one bond $^{19}F$ - $^{13}C$ coupling (220 Hz) to the C-2 carbon of the dioxalane ring. The covalency of the carbon - fluorine bond as opposed to an ion pair arrangement was therefore established. Table 1 lists the chemical shifts and coupling constants of the $^{1}H$ and $^{19}F$ - n.m.r. spectra for compounds **52**, **53**, **57**, **58** and table 2 the $^{1}H$, $^{13}C$ and $^{19}F$ - n.m.r. data for compounds **60** to **63**. The chemical shifts and coupling constants for the anomeric fluorides **62** and **63** are in general accord with those reported in the literature (90) and the data obtained for the orthoacyl fluorides are similar to those of 1,2 orthoesters or 1,2 acetals (91).

**Table 1 :** Chemical Shifts [a] and Coupling Constants for Anomeric Fluorides **54**,**55** and Orthoacyl Fluorides **57**,**58** [b]

| Nucleus | 54 | 55 | 57 | 58 |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| H-1 ($J_{12}$, $J_{1F}$) | 5.769 (2.7,54.0) | 5.469 (6.8,52.3) | 5.867 (5.3) | n.d. |
| H-2 ($J_{23}$,$J_{2F}$) | n.d. (10) | 5.176 (9.0,12.0) | 4.595 (3.0, -) | n.d. |
| H-3 ($J_{34}$) | 5.640 (10) | 5.452 (9.5) | 5.332 (2.5) | n.d. |
| H-4 ($J_{45}$) | n.d. | 5.282 (10.0) | 4.16-4.18 (n.d.) | n.d. |
| H-5 ($J_{56}$) | n.d. (4.5) | 4.042 (5.0) | 4.16-4.17 nd | n.d. |
| H-6 ($J_{66'}$) | 4.347 (12.0) | 4.273 (12.5) | 5.052 (m) | n.d. |
| H-6' ($J_{56'}$) | 4.100 (2.0) | 4.138 (2.5) | 3.914 (4.5) | n.d. |
| OAc | n.d. | 2.005,1.915, 1.858 | 2.010,1.970 | n.d. |
| H-B[c] ($J_{CH_3,F}$) | ---- | ---- | 1.785 (12.5) | n.d. |
| 19F ($J_{F,H_2}$) | -150.0 (26.3) | -143.6 (12.0) | -56.8 ( - ) | -57.0 ( - ) |
| ($J_{F,H_1}$) | (54.2) | (52.7) | ( - ) | ( - ) |
| ($J_{F,CH_3}$) | ( - ) | ( - ) | (12.5) | (12.8) |

The spectral data are reported with more accuracy (signilicant figures) than can be reasonably expected from the experiments to allow distinction of the different chemical shifts of the complex overlapping proton signals.

[a] Chemical shifts of 1H-NMR spectra are relative to TMS ($\delta$ = 0); Chemical shifts of 19F-NMR spectra are relative to external $CFCl_3$ ($\delta$ = 0); Chemical shifts of 13C-NMR are relative to $CDCl_3$ ($\delta$ = 77.05); Splittings are reported as if they were first order coupling constants

[b] 1H and 19F-NMR spectra are recorded in THF-d8; 13C-NMR spectra are recorded in $CDCl_3$

nd not determined

[c] H-B are the protons of the methyl group attached to the C-2 of the dioxalane ring

**Table 2:** Chemical Shifts [a] and Coupling Constants for the Anomeric Fluorides **62**, **63** and Orthoacyl Fluorides **60** and **61** [b]

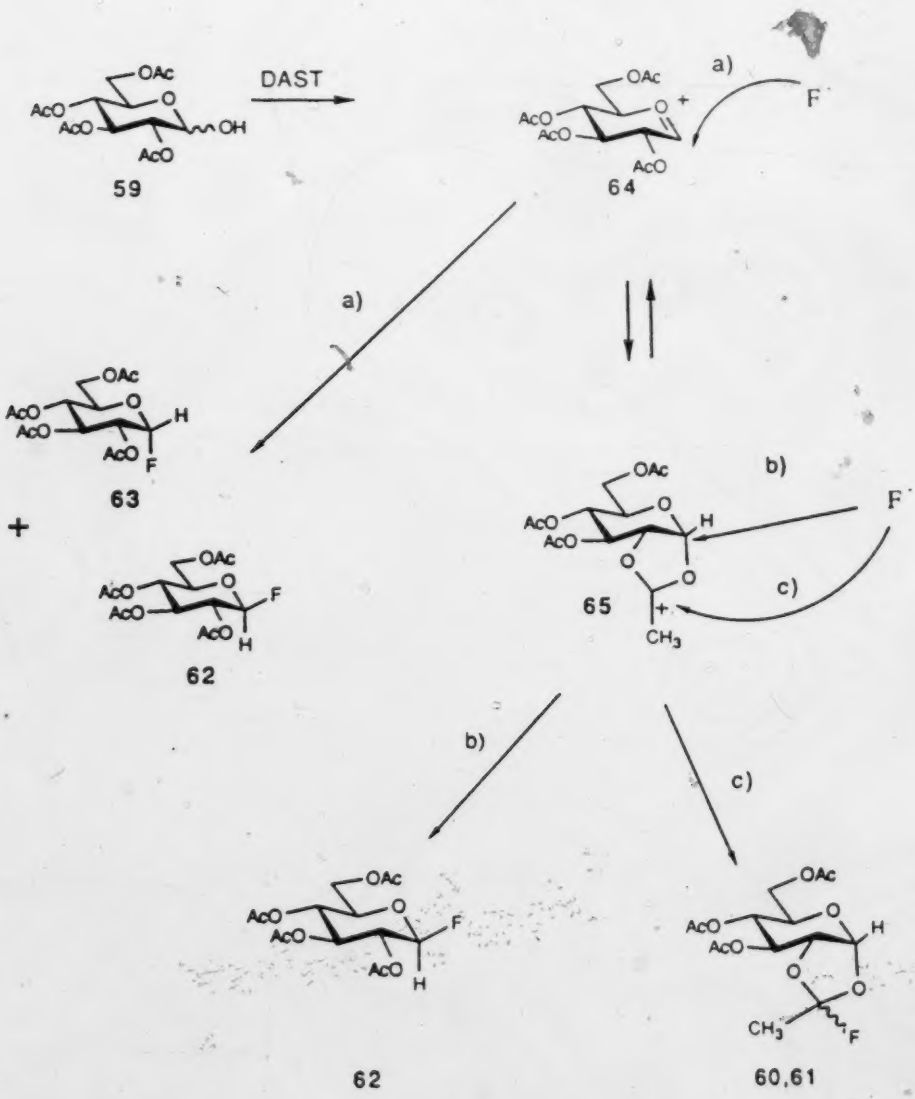
| Nucleus | 60 | 61 | 62 | 63 |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| H-1 ($J_{1,2}$,$J_{1,F}$) | 5.795 (5.5, -) | 5 785 (6.0, -) | 5.420 (7.0,53.0) | 5.742 (2.7,53.0) |
| H-2 ($J_{2,3}$,$J_{2,F}$) | 4.497 (2.8), -) | 4.434 (5.0,3.0) | 5.030 (9.0,12.0) | 4.987 (10,25.0) |
| H-3 ($J_{3,4}$) | 5.130 (2-3) | 5.435 (8.0) | 5.260 (9.0) | 5.415 (10.0) |
| H-4 ($J_{4,5}$) | 4.13-4.14 (n.d.) | n.d. | 5.152 (10.0) | ≅ 5.13 (10) |
| H-5 ($J_{5,6}$) | 4.13-4.14 (n.d.) | n.d. | 3.982 (5.0) | 4.176 (4.5) |
| H-6 ($J_{6,6'}$) | 4.884 (9.7) | 4.317 (12.3) | 4.242 (12.2) | 4.360 (12.5) |
| H-6' ($J_{5,6'}$) | 3.850 (m) | 4.065 (2.3) | 4.128 (2.5) | 4.085 (2.1) |
| OAc | 2.052,2.025, 1.992 | 1.965, n.d., n.d. | 2.005,2.017, 1.970,1.937 | 2.030,2.002, 1.975,1.925 |
| H-B ($J_{CH3,F}$)[c] | 1.767 (12.5) | 1.652 (13.0) | ---- | ---- |
| C-1 ($J_{C,F}$) | 96.80 | n.d. | 106.05 (220.5) | 103.60 (228.0) |
| C-2 ($J_{C,F}$) | 72.55 | n.d. | 71.00 (28.5) | 69.95 (24.5) |
| C-3 ($J_{C,F}$) | 69.20 | n.d. | 71.53 (8.5)[c] | n.d. |
| C-4 ($J_{C,F}$) | 67.75 | n.d. | 67.25 | 67.15 |
| C-5 ($J_{C,F}$) | 67.00 | n.d. | 71.75 (4.0)[c] | 69.6 (4.5) |
| C-6 ($J_{C,F}$) | 62.75 | n.d. | 61.55 | 61.00 |
| $C_a$($J_{C,F}$)[c] | 126.30 (249.0) | n.d. | ---- | ---- |
| $C_b$ ($J_{C,F}$)[c] | 20.20 (41.0) | n.d. | ---- | ---- |
| $^{19}F$ ($J_{F,2}$) | - 56.9 (-) | - 52.6 (3.0) | - 142.0 (11.8) | - 150.4 (24.5) |
| ($J_{F,1}$) | (-) | (5.0) | (53.7) | (53.0) |
| ($J_{F,CH3}$) | (13.0) | (13.0) | ---- | ---- |

The spectral data are reported with more accuracy (signilicant figures) than can be reasonably expected from the experiments to allow distinction of the different chemical shifts of the complex overlapping proton signals.[a] Chemical shifts of the $^1H$- n.m.r. resonances are relative to that of $Me_4Si$ ($\delta = 0$); of $^{19}F$-n.m.r. to external $CFCl_3$ ($\delta = 0$) and of $^{13}C$-n.m.r. are relative to $CDCl_3$ ($\delta = 77.05$); Splittings are reported as if they were first order coupling constants, [b] $^1H$ and $^{19}F$- n.m.r. spectra were recorded for solutions in tetrahydrofuran-$d_8$, and the $^{13}C$-n.m.r. spectra for solutions in $CDCl_3$, **n.d.** not determined. [c] $C_a$ is the C-2 of the dioxolane ring ; $C_b$ is the carbon of the methyl group attached to the C-2 of the dioxolane ring; H-B are the protons of the methyl group attached to the C-2 of the dioxalane ring.

The crude reaction mixture had to be purified somewhat to obtain the $^{13}C$- spectra since excess DAST interfered with the observation of the carbon signals. Since aqueous work-up caused instant decomposition of the orthoacyl fluorides, the reaction mixture was simply evaporated *in vacuo* and coevaporated with toluene to remove most of the DAST. The remaining residue could be dissolved in deuterated chloroform and the product mixture remained stable for several days showing no rearrangement of the orthoacyl fluorides. Addition of DAST to this mixture caused slow (about 60% in 2 hours) rearrangement of the orthoacyl fluorides to the anomeric fluorides. Addition of $BF_3$· etherate to the chloroform solution rearranged the orthoacyl fluorides to the anomeric fluorides within an hour, but failed to do so when added to the orthoacyl fluorides in the THF reaction mixture. Tetra-n-butylammonium fluoride and triflic acid also had no significant effect on the product ratios when added after completion of the reaction to the product mixture in THF. The remarkable stability of the orthoacyl fluoride when water or alcohols were excluded, led us to attempt their crystallization from dry diethyl ether and hexane, but only α and β- fluorides crystallized after a few days and re-examination of the mother liquor showed only minor amounts of orthoacyl fluorides.

The acyloxonium ion **65** is a commonly postulated intermediate in reactions involving neighboring group participation of 2-O-acetyl groups (90,21). It was therefore thought that the orthoacyl fluoride should also be observed in reactions using solvents other than THF. To our surprise, when a larger scale reaction was performed in the less expensive deuterated solvent chloroform, only the anomeric fluorides **62** and **63** were observed in a ratio of 3 to 1 even after only 5 -10 minutes of reaction time. The orthoacyl fluorides once formed were stable in chloroform for several days.

Scheme 7 : Possible pathways to the observed products during the reaction of reducing sugars with DAST



Even after $BF_3$-etherate or DAST had been added the orthoacyl fluorides rearranged only slowly over a period of an hour or longer to the anomeric fluorides. Hence it seems unlikely that orthoacyl fluorides are formed transiently during the reaction in chloroform and the reaction proceeds probably by different pathway than it does in THF.

Scheme 7 displays the commonly postulated mechanistic pathway for reactions at the anomeric center with neighboring group participation (89) such as glycosidations or anomeric halide formation. From the above observations both the oxocarbonium intermediate **64** and the acyloxonium ion **65** must be involved in the THF reactions, but the same does not seem to hold true for solvents like chloroform, where the intermediate **65** might not be formed. The prevalent formation of β-anomers during reactions with neighboring group participation in solvents like chloroform might therefore have other reasons than the formation of the acyl oxonium ion **65**. In an attempt to synthesize acyl orthoesters Wulff et al. (91) found that these could be formed in good yields by treatment of an anomeric glycosyl bromide with silver carboxylic acid salts in THF. Investigating the effect of THF they found an increase in α- glycoside formation in reactions without neighboring group participation when THF was used instead of other solvents (92). These observations were explained by the formation of a β - adduct between THF and the oxocarbonium ion **64**, thus increasing the amount of α- anomer formed in nonparticipating reactions and facilitating the formation of **65** for reactions involving neighboring participating groups such as 2-O-acetates.

It seems that the reason for the difference in the reaction path for THF as opposed to other solvents is the more facile formation and perhaps enhanced stability of the acyloxonium intermediate **65**. The question thus arises whether the equilibrium between **64** and **65** is established quickly or

whether a significant part of the β- fluoride is formed by attack on **64** and thus the rates of product formation and equilibrium formation are of the same order of magnitude.

Since the oxocarbonium ion **64** is postulated to be formed first in the reaction pathway and then rearranges to the ion **65**, an increase in the fluoride ion concentration prior to the addition of DAST should increase the amount of α and β-fluoride formed (path a) if the rate of attack on the intermediates by fluoride ion is comparable to the rate of transformation of **64** to **65**. If, however, the equilibrium is established quickly compared to the rate of fluoride addition, then the increase in fluoride concentration should have no effect.

**Table 3:** Ratios of the Orthoacyl Fluorides **60** and **61** to the Anomeric Fluoride **62** and **63** as a Function Varying Fluoride Concentration

| Moles sugar ($x 10^{-5}$) | Moles $F^-$ ($x10^{-5}$) [equiv.][b] | [o.a.F(exo) : o.a.F(endo) : β -F : α-F][c] (in %) | o.a.F (**60**,**61**) : α,β-F (**62**,**63**) (in %) |
|---|---|---|---|
| 2.920 | 0 [0.00] | 43 : 9 : 35 : 13 | 52 : 48 |
| 2.920 | 1.62 [0.55] | 41 : 12 : 31 : 16 | 53 : 47 |
| 2.920 | 3.24 [1.11] | 42 : 11 : 32 : 15 | 53 : 47 |
| 2.920 | 6.47 [2.21] | 45 : 7 : 32 : 16 | 52 : 48 |
| 2.920 | 9.71 [3.32] | 44 : 7 : 29 : 20 | 52 : 48 |

[a] Fluoride ion is added as tetra n-butylammonium fluoride in THF $d^8$
[b] [equiv.] = equivalent fluoride to sugar concentration
[c] o.a.F = orthoacyl fluoride, α,β-F = α and β - anomeric fluorides
DAST concentration in each experiment waş $1.514 \times 10^{-4}$ moles

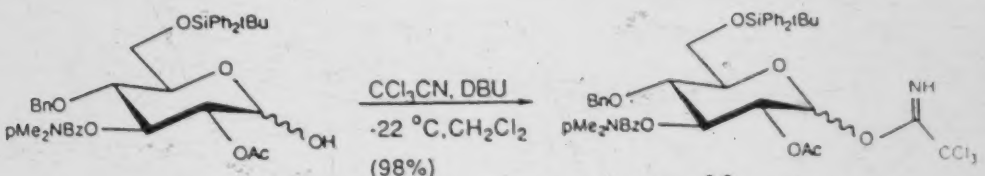
The results of increasing the fluoride concentration from 0 to about 3 equivalents are listed in table 3. As column 4 shows, the overall ratio of orthoacyl fluorides to α,β-fluorides does not change with increasing fluoride concentration, which indicates that **65** is formed quickly from **64** and that the products are mainly produced by attack on the established equilibrium.

Examples of the use of THF as the solvent to prepare anomeric fluorides involving neighboring group participation are rare (93).The reported yields of about 50 % anomeric fluorides with about 40 % recovery of the starting material are consistent with the formation of orthoacyl fluorides in these cases. 1,2-Dimethoxyethane (94 - 96) is more commonly used as the solvent because then quantitative yields of the anomeric fluorides were obtained. It therefore seems that THF is somewhat special in its behavior, but other ethers should also be investigated. As indicated by Wulff et al. (92) diethyl ether, however, does not have the same effect .

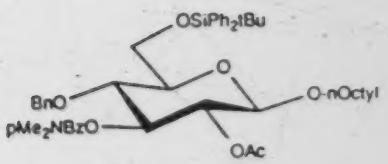
The hydrolysis pathway of the orthoacyl fluoride should involve the intermediate orthoacid and some α-1-O-acetate derivative should therefore also be formed during the hydrolysis of the orthoacyl fluorides. This species is indeed observed as a minor component among the products obtained by aqueous decomposition of **60** and **61**.

Although much more work could have been performed on the formation, rearrangement and decomposition of this orthoacyl fluoride, we felt that the experiments performed characterized the orthoacyl fluorides sufficiently and returned to the initial synthetic studies into the formation of β-mannosides by intramolecular inversion. A manuscript describing the characterization of the orthoacyl fluorides by n.m.r. spectroscopy was recently accepted for publication (97).

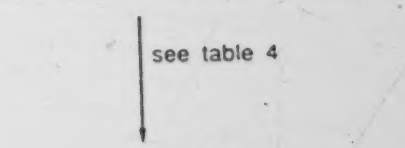
Returning to the glycosidation studies, it had been found, that by the use of anomeric imidates and their activation with $BF_3$·etherate, β-glycosides of reactive alcohols could be formed even in the presence of the *p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl group.

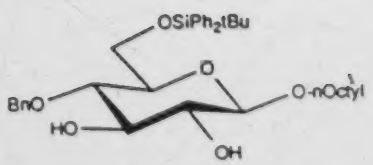



36 66

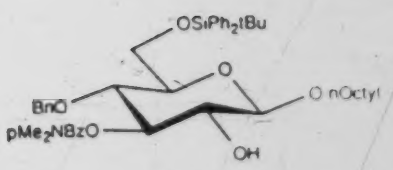



67

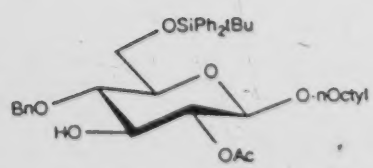



69




68




70

It was therefore decided to produce the n-octyl glycoside of compound **36**, since the n-octyl group offers considerable advantages in the isolation and purification of unprotected oligosaccharides using adsorption onto reverse phase matrices.

The reducing sugar **36** was treated with 2,2,2 trichloroacetonitrile and DBU (81) in dichloromethane at -22 °C to provide the imidate **66** in 98 % yield as an α,β mixture. Reaction of **66** with n-octanol in dichloromethane using $BF_3$·etherate at -22 °C provided the octyl glycoside **67** in only 36 % isolated yield although the reaction appeared almost quantitative by t.l.c.. This yield was not optimized since subsequent selective removal of the 2 -O-acetyl group to provide **68** failed.

There are many methods reported in the literature to remove acetates selectively in the presence of benzoates (56) as well as methods to remove 2-O-acetates in the presence of acetates at other positions of a sugar pyranoside (54,57,58,98). It had therefore been assumed that the removal of a 2-O-acetate in the presence of a 3-O-*p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl group should proceed with good selectivity, but this was not the case. Table 4 lists all the conditions employed and the ratios of products formed. A reason for the nonselectivity and the slow rates could be that the compound is sterically hindered towards attack at the 2-position and thus reaction at the 3 position also occurs. After one group has been removed, the removal of the next one is then accelerated as the compound becomes less hindered.

**Table 4 :** Summary of Deacetylation Attempts for Compound **67**

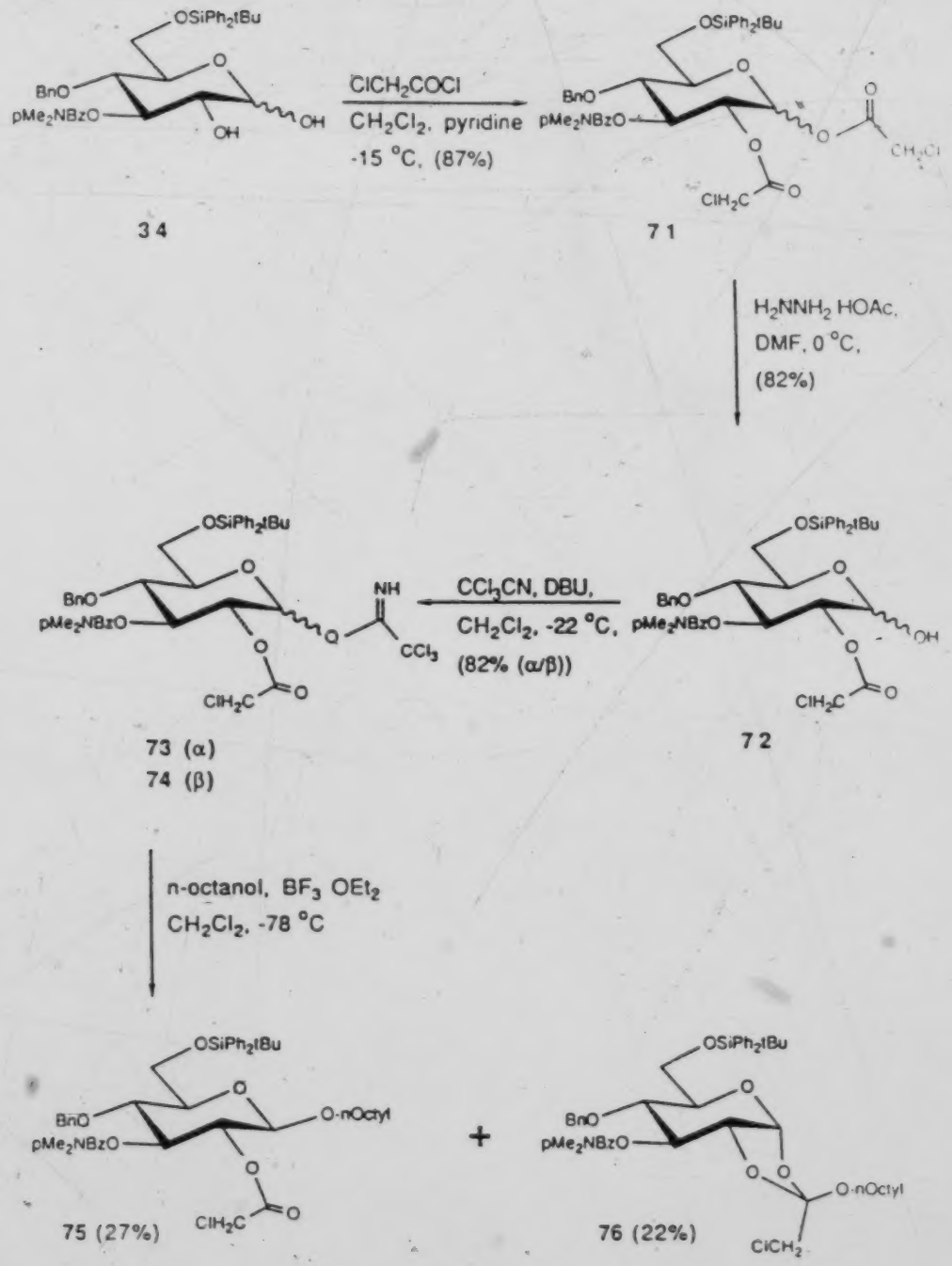
| **Method of Deacetylation** | **approx. Rate** (% **67** converted to Products / Time) | **approx. Ratios of Products** (by TLC) **68 : 69 : 70** | **Ref. #** |
|---|---|---|---|
| NaOMe, MeOH / $CH_2Cl_2$ (1 : 1), 0 °C | 50 % / 2.5 hrs | 5 : 5 : 1 | 54 |
| $H_2NNH_2 \cdot H_2O$, r.t., pyridine | 30 % / 24 hrs | 7 : 4 : 1 | 55 |
| sat. $H_3N$ / MeOH, r.t. → 40 °C | no rxn / 24 hrs, add $H_2O$, then 60 % / 72 hrs | 1 : 3 : 3 | 56 |
| $Et_3N$, (40 µL $H_2O$ / mL MeOH : $CH_2Cl_2$ (1 : 1), r.t. | 20 % / 24 hrs | 2 : 1 : 0 | |
| $H_2NNH_2 \cdot HOAc$, DMF, 40 °C | no rxn. | - | |
| $H_2NNH_2 \cdot H_2O$, r.t. pyridine / HOAc (4 : 1) | 60 % / 24 hrs | 1 : 1 : 0 | 55 |
| KOtBu / tBuOH, r.t. | 60 % / 48 hrs | 3 : 3 : 1 | 57 |
| 3 % HCl / MeOH, 0 °C | 50 % / 24 hrs | decomposition | 58,30 |

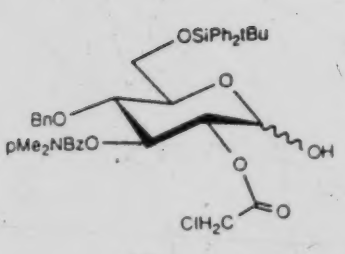
The chloroacetyl group was therefore chosen to replace the acetyl group as a protecting group for the OH-2, since it is a participating group and

can be removed with weak nucleophiles as well as with thiourea (99). If selective removal of the chloroacetate by hydrolysis should fail as seen for the acetate, then the use of thiourea might be successful in removing the acyl group. Thiourea first displaces the chloride at the C-2 of the chloroacetyl group and then removes the acyl group by intramolecular attack. The initial attack of thiourea is therefore specific for the chloroacetyl group and should be little affected by steric hindrance (100).

The diol **34** was therefore treated with 2-chloroacetyl chloride in dichloromethane containing pyridine at -15 °C to provide **71** in 87 % yield (101). Chromatography of **71** had to be rapid since the chloroacetyl groups were removed during purification on silica gel columns. The derivative **71** could be selectively deacylated at the anomeric oxygen using hydrazine acetate in DMF (73) at 0 °C to yield 82 % of the reducing sugar **72**. Conversion of **72** to the α,β-imidates **73** and **74** (5 : 2) proceeded in 82 % yield using 2,2,2-trichloroacetonitrile and DBU (81) in dichloromethane at -22 °C. Glycosidation of n-octanol using the imidates and $BF_3$· etherate in dichloromethane at -78 °C gave the β-glycoside **75** in 27 % yield and the orthoester **76** in 22 % yield. Loss of the chloroacetyl group seemed to occur during the reaction as well as some other decomposition reactions.

Attempts to rearrange the orthoester to the β- glycoside (102) using $BF_3$· etherate or mercuric acetate at room temperature failed. The sluggishness of the orthoester towards rearrangement had been expected since even octyl orthoacetates rearrange very slowly.The electron withdrawing nature of the chloride in **76** should slow rearrangement even more, but it was unfortunate that no rearrangement could be obtained at all in this case.

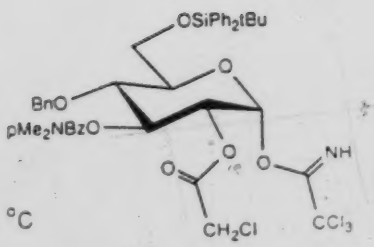

OSiPh2tBu
BnO
pMe2NBzO
OH
ClCH2COCl
CH2Cl2, pyridine
-15 °C, (87%)
CH2Cl
ClH2C
34
71
H2NNH2 HOAc,
DMF, 0 °C,
(82%)
NH
CCl3
CCl3CN, DBU,
CH2Cl2, -22 °C,
(82% (α/β))
73 (α)
74 (β)
72
n-octanol, BF3 OEt2
CH2Cl2, -78 °C
O-nOctyl
75 (27%)
+
76 (22%)
ClCH2




72

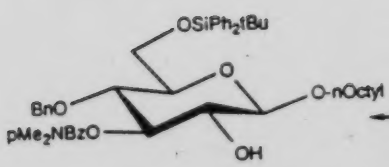
$CCl_3CN$,
0.8 equiv. DBU

0.4 equiv. NaH
$CH_2Cl_2$, -78 to -40 °C
(65%, α only)



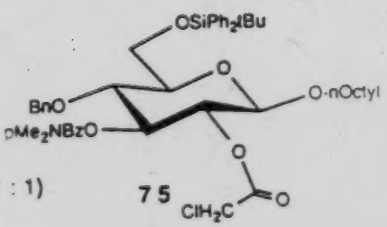

73

n-octanol, $BF_3$ $OEt_2$
$CH_2Cl_2$ : hexane (1 : 9)
10 volume% $CH_3CN$
-22 °C,
(65%)



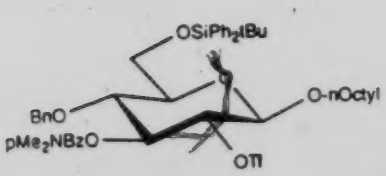

68

$H_2NNH_2 \cdot HOAc$
DMF, r.t., (96%)
or
$H_2NNH_2 \cdot HOAc$
$MeOH/CH_2Cl_2$ (1 : 1)
r.t., (69%)




75

$(CF_3SO_2)_2O$,
0 °C, $CH_2Cl_2$
pyridine
(76%)




77

Changing the solvent to nitromethane resulted in an increase in orthoester formation, while the use of dichloromethane : hexane (1 : 5) or (1 : 9) seemed to give some improvement in the ratio of glycoside to orthoester as judged by t.l.c.. These improvements were however only modest (about 10 % more glycoside).

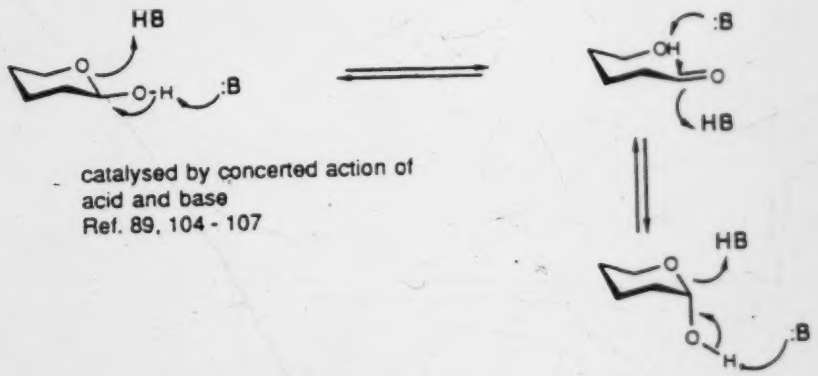
In one reaction, reacting the α,β-imidates **73** and **74** with $BF_3$· etherate in dichloromethane - hexane (1 : 9) a small reduction in the amount of orthoester as compared with the amount of β-glycoside was observed (about 1 : 3 instead of 1 : 2 by t.l.c.). One possible difference to previous reactions was that a trace contamination with 2,2,2-trichloroacetonitrile could have occurred. Repeating the reaction in the presence of 2,2,2-trichloroacetonitrile indeed improved the amount of β-glycoside from 39 % to 50 % as judged from the integration of crude mixture n.m.r. spectra. The initial assumption, that this improvement was due to rearrangement of the orthoester mediated by 2,2,2-trichloroacetonitrile, proved to be wrong since the initial ratio of orthoester to glycoside did not change after prolonged incubation

It was therefore assumed that 2,2,2-trichloroacetonitrile somehow prevented the orthoester formation during the reaction itself. Recently Sinay et al. (103) used acetonitrile and proprionitrile as a solvent mixture in glycosidation reactions involving no neighboring group participation and obtained mainly β- glycosides, presumably by the formation of an α-adduct between acetonitrile and the oxocarbonium ion. Formation of a similar adduct may also be the reason for the observed reduction in the formation of orthoester.

Chromatography in ethylacetate : dichloromethane : hexane (1 : 2 : 6) allowed the separation of the two anomers of the imidates and thus the reactivity of **73** and **74** were investigated separately. Using only the

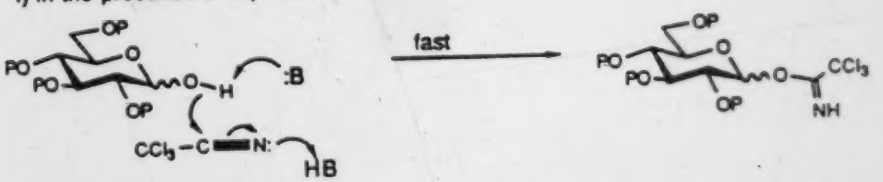
**Scheme 8 :** Possible Mechanism for the Formation of Anomeric Trichloroacetimidates

a) Mechanism of the mutarotation of anomeric reducing sugars

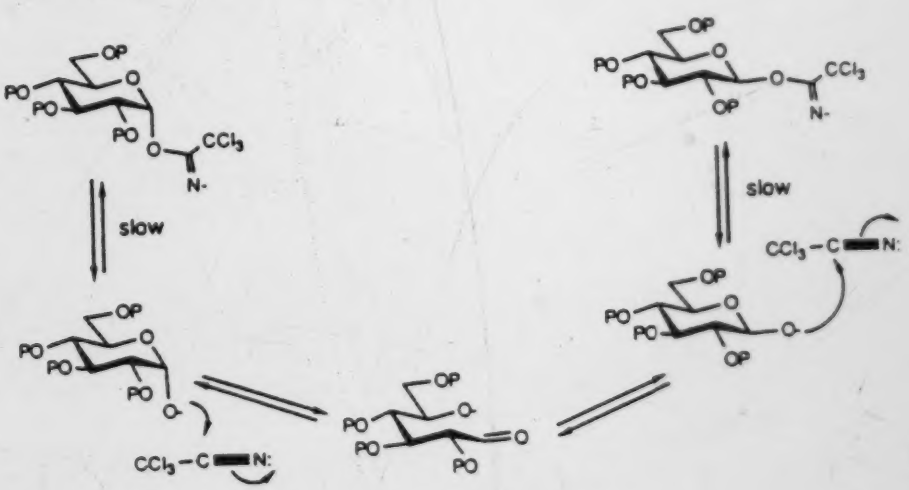



b) Possible mechanism of trichloroacetimidate formation

i) in the presence of a proton source




ii) without proton source

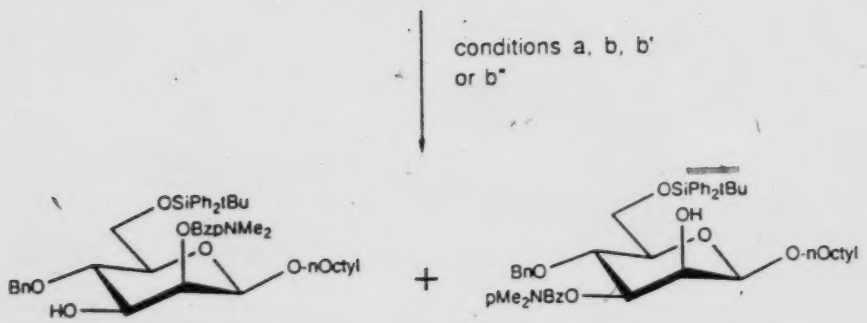


α-imidate **73**, n-octanol was glycosidated using $BF_3$·etherate in dichloromethane : hexane (1 : 9) containing 10 % acetonitrile to surprisingly provide only β- glycoside (quantitative by n.m.r., isolated yield 65%). Reaction of the β-imidate **74** under identical conditions provided only orthoester. It thus seems that the reaction of the α- imidate does not involve neighboring group participation under these conditions.

In a procedure using sodium hydride and 2,2,2-trichloroacetonitrile in dichloromethane at room temperature , Schmidt et al. (81) obtained 80 % of the α-imidate of 2,3,4,6-tetra-O-benzyl-D-glucopyranose and 2,3,4,6-tetra-O-acetyl-D-glucopyranose, but when the reducing sugar **72** was treated accordingly, the compound decomposed totally and at a lower temperature the reaction did not proceed at all. Considering the possible mechanism of this reaction, it appears that the formation of the imidate should be best catalysed by the presence of both a base and a proton source similar to the mechanism for the mutarotation of reducing sugars (see scheme 8, 89,104,105). The reaction using excess sodium hydride eliminates any proton source from the reaction medium and should therefore be slow compared to reactions using DBU. DBU can act not only as a base but also as a proton donor, once some of its conjugate acid has been formed. Indeed, while the reaction using sodium hydride is slow even at room temperature, the DBU reaction proceeds rapidly even at -78 °C.

Combining the characteristics of both reactions it might therefore be possible to obtain an increased yield of α-imidate at a lower temperature. The imidate has to be deprotonated to allow reversal of the reaction and mutarotation of the sugar, but a proton shuttle has to be present to allow efficient catalysis of imidate formation. The reaction was therefore performed using 2,2,2-trichloroacetonitrile at -40 °C in the presence of 0.8 equivalent

77




78

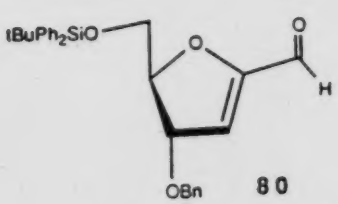
a) 43%
b) 50%
b') 34%
b") 35%

+

79

a) 20%
b) 35%
b') 21%
b") 10%

+



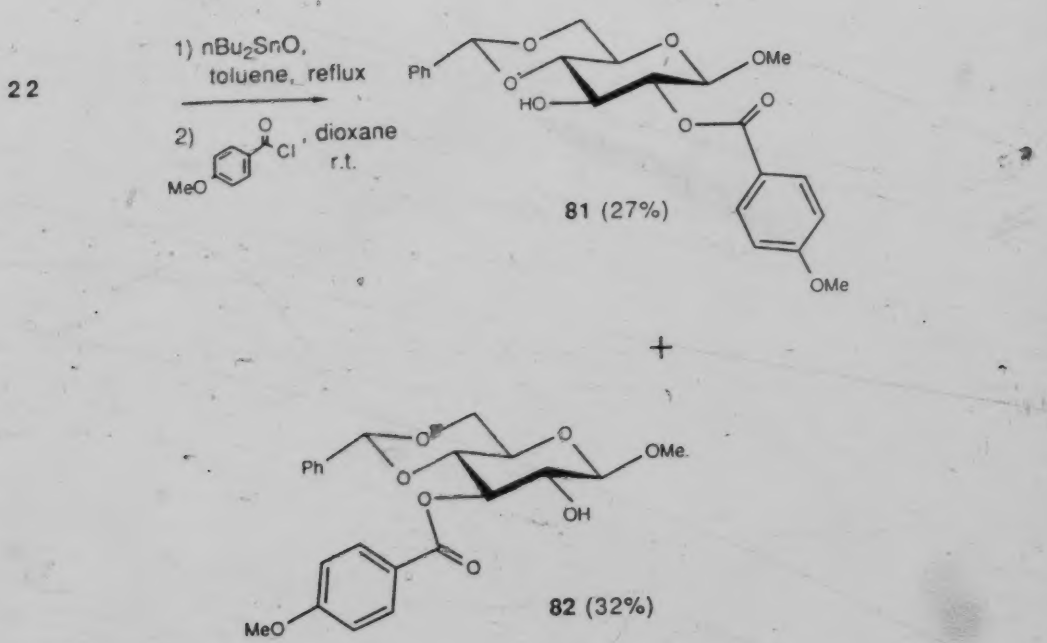

80

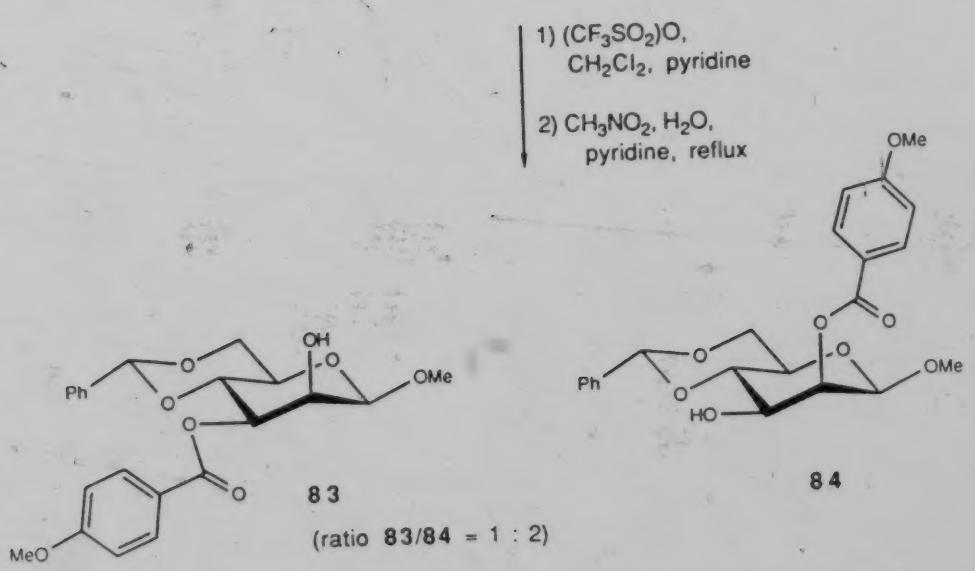
a) 27%
b) 15%
b') 3.5%
b") not det.

Conditions : a) DMF, $H_2O$, pyridine, 60 °C, 5 hrs, (isolated 78 - 80 : 90%)
b) $CH_3NO_2$, $H_2O$, pyridine, reflux (100 °C), 15 min., (78-80 only by n.m.r. on crude mixture )
b') $CH_3NO_2$, $H_2O$, pyridine, 60 °C, 2 hrs, (isolated 78 - 80 : 60%)
b") $CH_3NO_2$, $H_2O$, pyridine, 40 °C, 24 hrs, (isolated 78 - 80 : 45%)

DBU, so that its protonated form could serve as a proton shuttle, and 0.4 equivalent of sodium hydride to assure that some of the anomeric hydroxyls or imidates are deprotonated. Although not all imidates would be deprotonated in such a reaction medium, it was hoped that proton transfer from one imidate to another would be fast. The reaction did indeed proceed cleanly to provide only the α and β- imidates **73** and **74** in an improved α to β ratio of about 4 : 1 and in 65 % and 19% isolated yield respectively.

After having obtained the octyl β-glycoside **75**, the chloroacetyl group was removed using hydrazine acetate in either methanol : dichloromethane (1 : 1) or dry DMF to provide **68** in 69 % or 96 % yield respectively. Compound **68** was reacted with trifluoromethanesulfonic anhydride in dichloromethane : pyridine (19 : 1) at 0 °C to provide the triflate **77** in 76 % yield after chromatography. The triflate was then heated to 60 °C in DMF containing pyridine and water to effect the inversion. Apart from the expected mannosides **78** (43 %) and **79** (20 %) a new compound was formed, which proved to be the furfural **80** (27%, $H_1$ = 9.50 p.p.m.,singlet). The formation of the side product 80 is likely due to the 1,2-migration of the ring oxygen displacing the triflate, which is ideally positioned antiperiplanar to the C1-O bond. This type of migration had been described earlier (108), but it had been hoped that the inversion by the arylacyl group would proceed faster than this side reaction. The lack of ring contracted product in the test reaction (**23** → **25** + **26**, page 20) was most likely due to the presence of the trans decalin system, which would require the formation of an unfavourable trans fused five - six ring system and thus the transition state for the ring contraction would be high in energy. The triflate **77** was heated to 100 °C in wet nitromethane containing pyridine in an attempt to improve the yield of the desired product **78**. The inversion proceeded rapidly to provide **78**, **79** and **80** in 50 %, 35 % and 15%

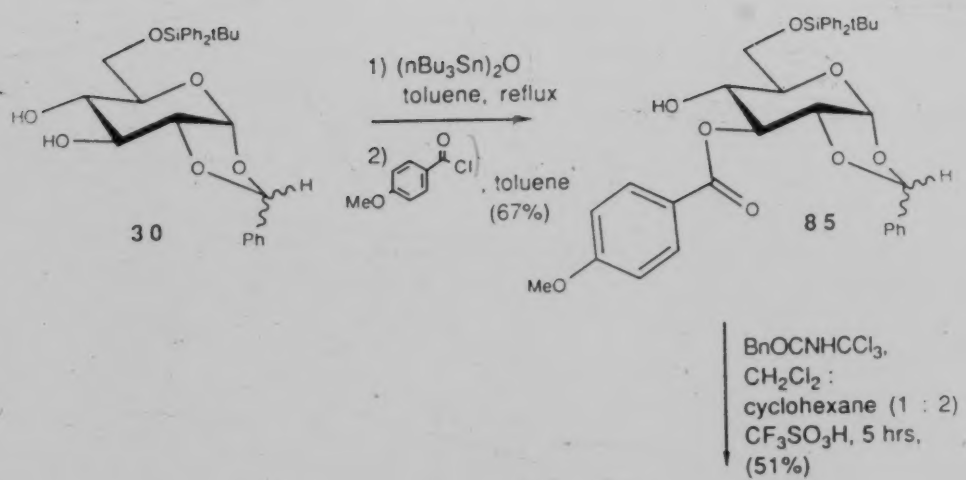

22
1) nBu2SnO, toluene, reflux
2) , dioxane r.t.
MeO
Cl
Ph
HO
OMe
81 (27%)
+
82 (32%)

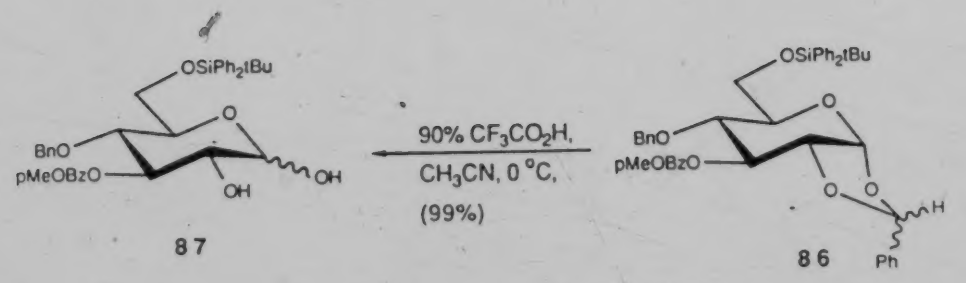

1) (CF3SO2)O, CH2Cl2, pyridine
2) CH3NO2, H2O, pyridine, reflux
OH
Ph
OMe
MeO
83
(ratio 83/84 = 1 : 2)
84

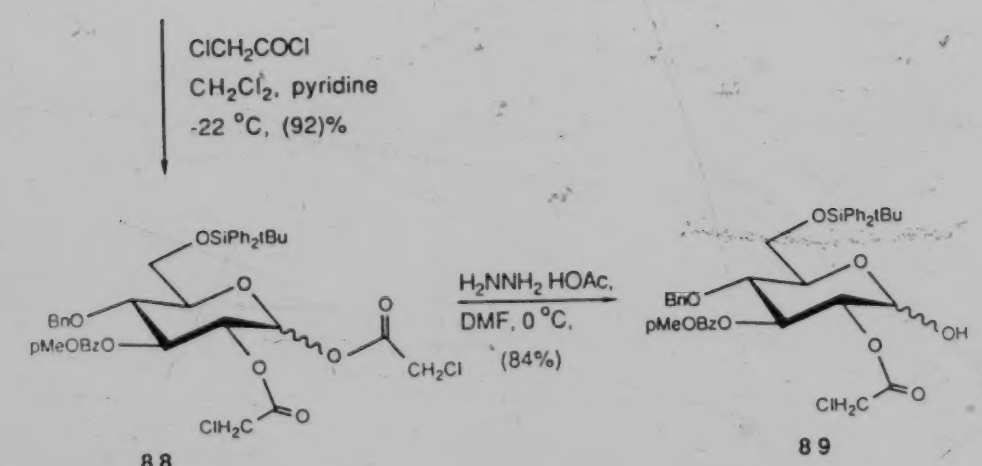
yield respectively as determined by $^1H$ - n.m.r. spectroscopy of the crude mixture. In a further attempt to reduce the amount of the sideproduct **80** the temperature of the reaction was decreased, while using otherwise identical conditions in nitromethane. Although the ratios of **78** and **79** to **80** did improve with decreasing temperature, the increase in reaction time required for the transformation caused more decomposition, thus leading to a lowering of overall yields (see **78** conditions b, b' and b").

It became obvious that the *p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl group was problematic in the glycosidation reactions so another electron rich acyl group, the anisoyl group was investigated. This group lacked a basic amine group and therefore an improvement in the glycosidation reactions was hoped for. To investigate the intramolecular inversion potential of the anisoyl group, the benzylidene derivative **82** was prepared to be used in a preliminary study similar to the one used for the *p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl group. Methyl 4,6-O-benzylidine-β-D-glucopyranoside **22** was first transformed into the 2,3-O-stannylidine derivative using di-n-butyltin oxide in refluxing toluene with azeotropic water removal. This derivative was then treated with anisoyl chloride in dioxane at room temperature to provide **82** in 32 % yield together with the 2-O-acyl derivative **81** (27 %) (68,69). Compound **82** was triflated with trifluoromethanesulfonic anhydride and then directly inverted using wet DMF and pyridine at 60 °C. The inversion proceeded smoothly, but more slowly than for the *p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl derivative **23**, and provided the mannosides **83** and **84** in a 1 : 1 ratio. The ratio of **84** to **83** could be improved to 2 : 1 by the use of refluxing wet nitromethane containing pyridine instead of DMF.

The anisoyl analogues of the *p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl compounds were prepared similarly in the hope that most of the problems in the synthetic


OSiPh2tBu
HO
HO
O
H
Ph
30
1) (nBu3Sn)2O
toluene, reflux
2)
Cl
MeO
, toluene
(67%)
85
MeO
BnOCNHCCl3,
CH2Cl2 :
cyclohexane (1 : 2)
CF3SO3H, 5 hrs,
(51%)


OSiPh2tBu
BnO
pMeOBzO
OH
87
90% CF3CO2H,
CH3CN, 0 °C,
(99%)
86
Ph

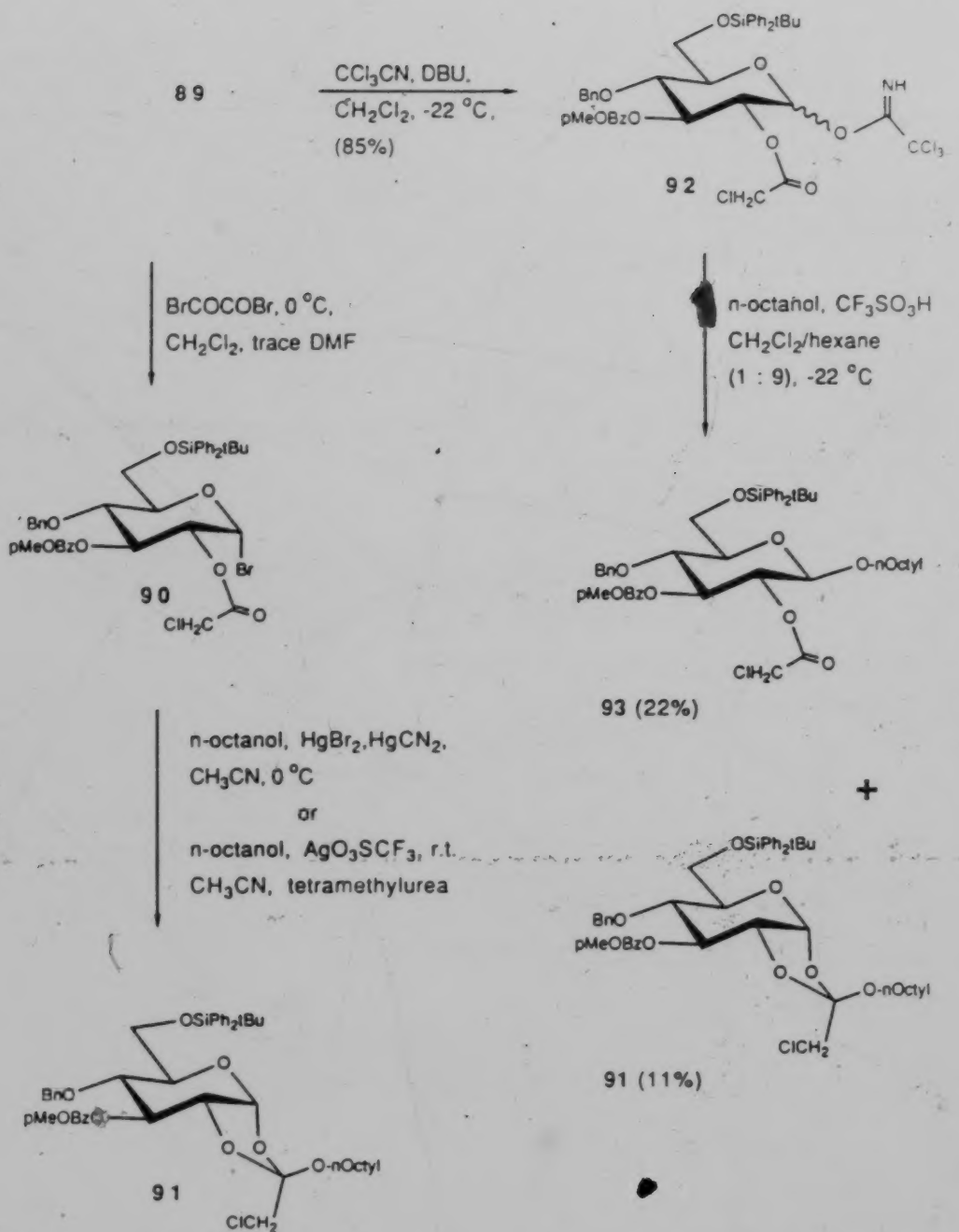

ClCH2COCl
CH2Cl2, pyridine
-22 °C, (92)%
CH2Cl
ClH2C
88
H2NNH2 HOAc,
DMF, 0 °C,
(84%)
89

method had already been solved and synthesis would proceed quickly. However some changes had to be made along the way none the less.

Diol **30** and *bis* - tributyltin oxide were refluxed in toluene with azeotropic water removal to provide the tributyltin derivative which was reacted with anisoyl chloride in toluene at room temperature to provide **85** in 67 % yield. The use of di-n-butyltin oxide as employed for the *p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl compound did not result in the same selectivity as before.

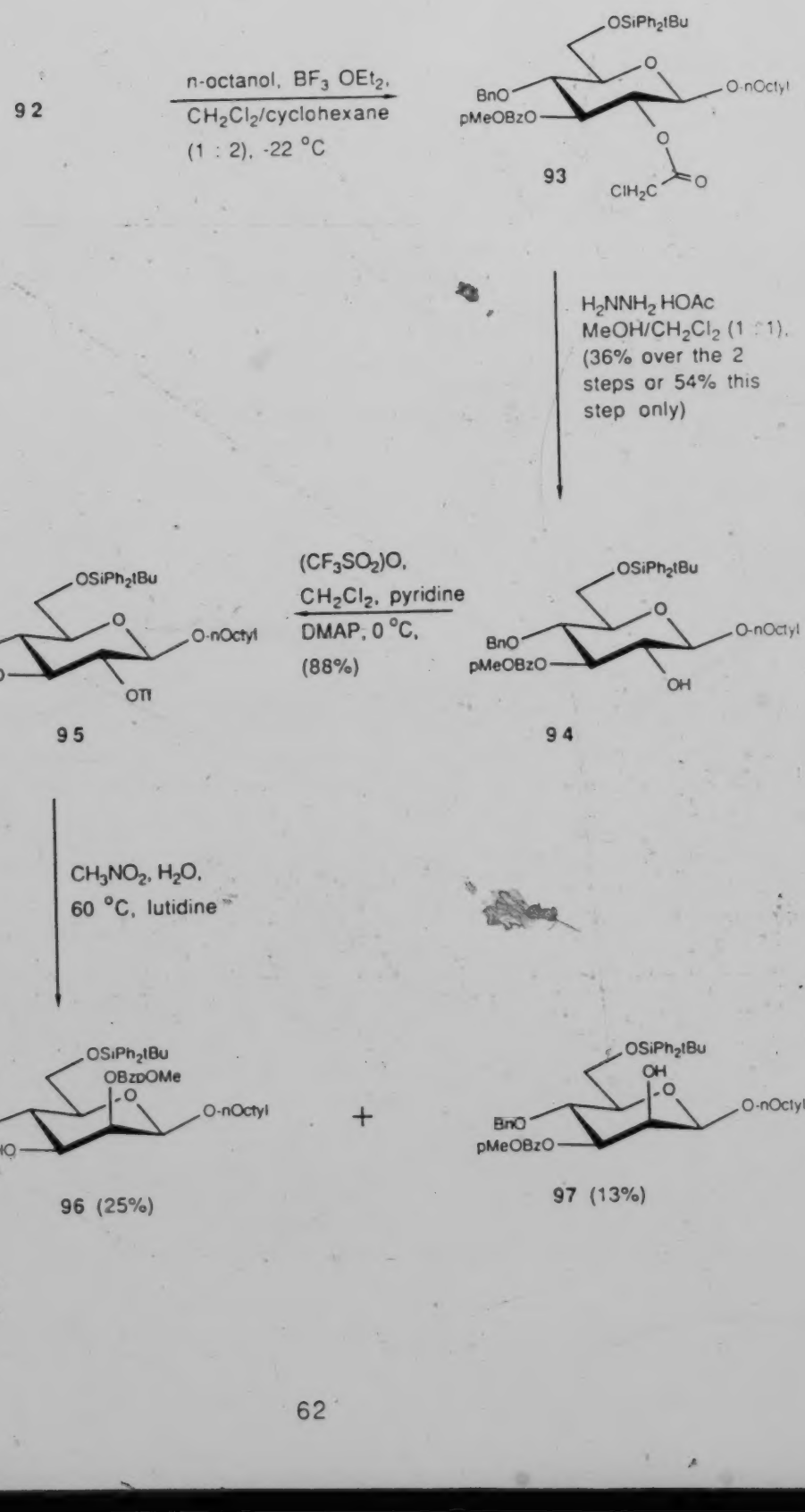
The four position of **85** could not be benzylated under basic conditions due to the increased migratory aptitude of the anisoyl group, but acidic benzylation according to Bundle (71) using benzyloxy-2,2,2-trichloroacetimidate and trifluorosulfonic acid in dichloromethane : cyclohexane (1 : 2) provided **86** in 51 % yield as no interfering *p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl group was present. The reaction had to be closely watched, as it proceeded to about 70 - 80% completion and then decomposed very rapidly within minutes.The reaction was thus usually terminated at about 60% conversion of starting material and the starting material recovered.

The fully protected derivative **86** could be debenzylidenated using 90 % trifluoroacetic acid in acetonitrile (64) at 0 °C to provide the diol **87** in almost quantitative yield. Chloroacetylation to yield **88** proceeded smoothly in 92 % yield using chloroacetyl chloride in dichloromethane in the presence of pyridine at -22 °C. The loss of the chloroacetyl group during chromatography was even more acute than for the *p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl derivative **71** and thus chromatography had to be rapid. All chloroacetylated compounds decomposed upon prolonged storage. It was possible to remove the anomeric chloroacetate group selectively using hydrazine acetate in dry DMF as before to give the reducing sugar **89** in 84 % yield.


89
CCl3CN, DBU,
CH2Cl2, -22 °C,
(85%)
OSiPh2tBu
BnO
pMeOBzO
NH
CCl3
92
ClH2C
BrCOCOBr, 0 °C,
CH2Cl2, trace DMF
n-octanol, CF3SO3H
CH2Cl2/hexane
(1 : 9), -22 °C
90
Br
93 (22%)
O-nOctyl
n-octanol, HgBr2,HgCN2,
CH3CN, 0 °C
or
n-octanol, AgO3SCF3, r.t.
CH3CN, tetramethylurea
+
91 (11%)
ClCH2
91

Since alcohol **89** lacked the problematic amino group present in **72**, an attempt was made to use the anomeric bromide as a glycosidating agent. Treatment of **89** with oxalyl bromide and DMF in dichloromethane at 0 °C produced the bromide **90**, which was, without further purification, reacted with n-octanol using either mercuric bromide and mercuric cyanide in acetonitrile or silver trifluoromethanesulfonate and tetramethylurea in dichloromethane. In both cases only the orthoester **91** was obtained. This orthoester was resistant to rearrangement using $BF_3$·etherate or trifluoromethanesulfonic acid and therefore the imidate method was again applied.

Reaction of **89** with trichloroacetonitrile and DBU at -22 °C provided the imidate **92** as an α,β mixture (ratio about 7 : 4) in 85 % yield. Reaction of **92** and n-octanol in dichloromethane : hexane (1 : 9) using triflic acid as the catalyst provided the glycoside **93** and the orthoester **91** in 22% and 11% yield, respectively. Dechloroacetylation of **93** to give **94** proceeded in 54% yield using hydrazine acetate in methanol : dichloromethane (1 : 1). Since dechloroacetylation was a problem during the glycosylation reaction, the glycoside **93** was also dechloroacetylated directly in the crude product mixture using hydrazine acetate in methanol : dichloromethane (1 :1) to provide **94** in 36 % yield over the two steps. Triflation of **94** with trifluoromethanesulfonic anhydride in dichloromethane : pyridine at 0 °C gave **95** in 89 % yield. Inversion of the triflate in wet nitromethane containing lutidine at 60 °C produced the mannosides **96** and **97** in about 25% and 13% yield respectively. There was extensive formation of some furanoid sideproducts similar to **80**, but they were not identified in detail. The products **96** and **97** could not be obtained in pure form due to interference of the side products during chromatography, but their structures could be assigned by n.m.r. of the partially purified products.

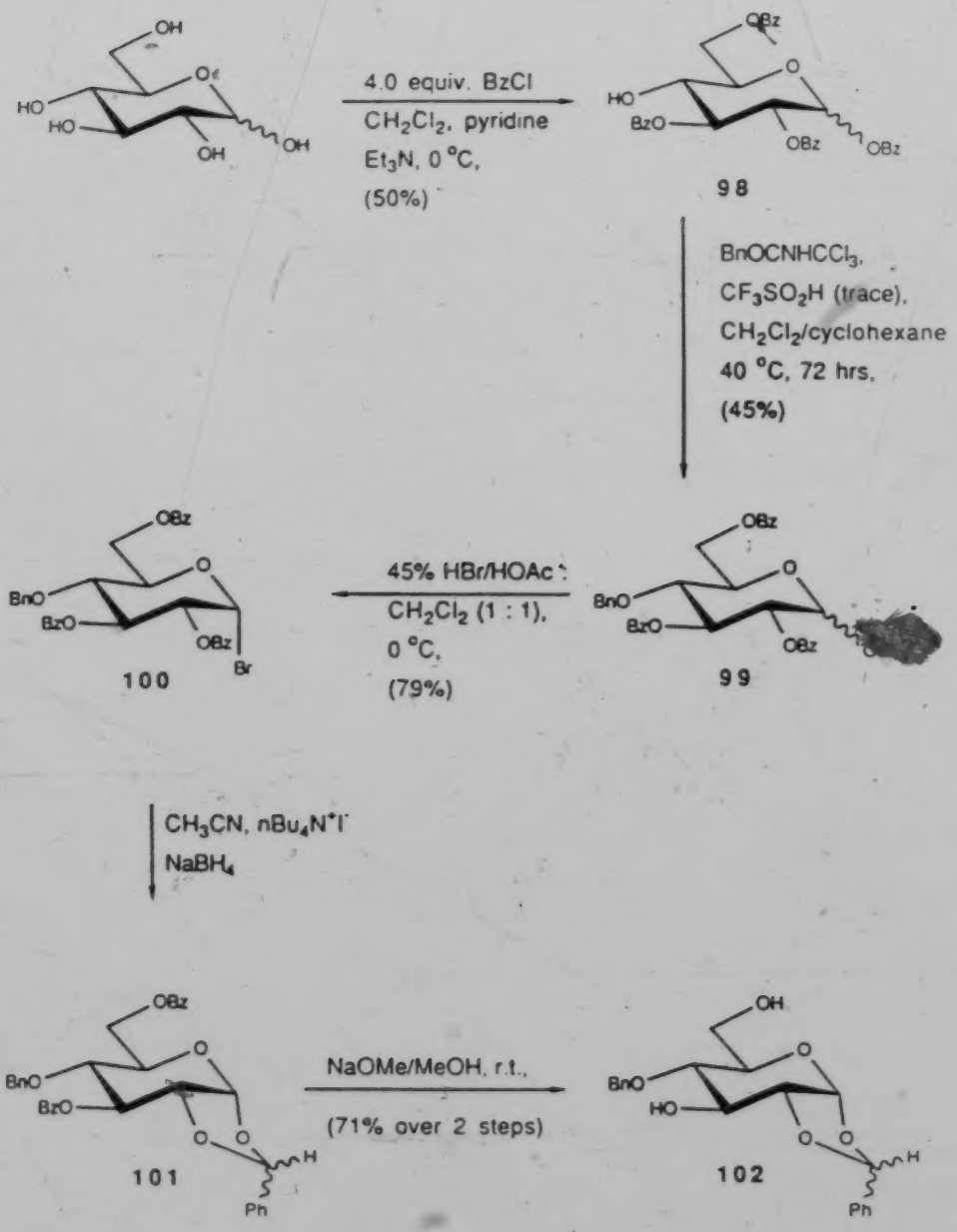

92
n-octanol, $BF_3$ $OEt_2$,
$CH_2Cl_2$/cyclohexane
(1 : 2), -22 °C
OSiPh$_2$tBu
BnO
pMeOBzO
O-nOctyl
ClH$_2$C
93
$H_2NNH_2$ HOAc
MeOH/$CH_2Cl_2$ (1 : 1),
(36% over the 2
steps or 54% this
step only)
$(CF_3SO_2)O$,
$CH_2Cl_2$, pyridine
DMAP, 0 °C,
(88%)
OTf
95
OH
94
$CH_3NO_2$, $H_2O$,
60 °C, lutidine
OBzDOMe
HO
96 (25%)
+
97 (13%)

An attempt was made to trap the transient 2,3 acyloxonium ion 11 (page 14) using methanol and pyridine with the hope of obtaining the methyl orthoester, which might then be hydrolyzed to the predominantly axial acyl derivative **96** by mild acid hydrolysis. Two products were obtained when **95** was heated in methanol and pyridine to 55 °C . These products did not rearrange upon treatment with acetic acid, but could be deacylated using sodium methoxide in methanol (81) indicating that they were not the desired orthoesters but some other rearrangement products. These products were not identified.

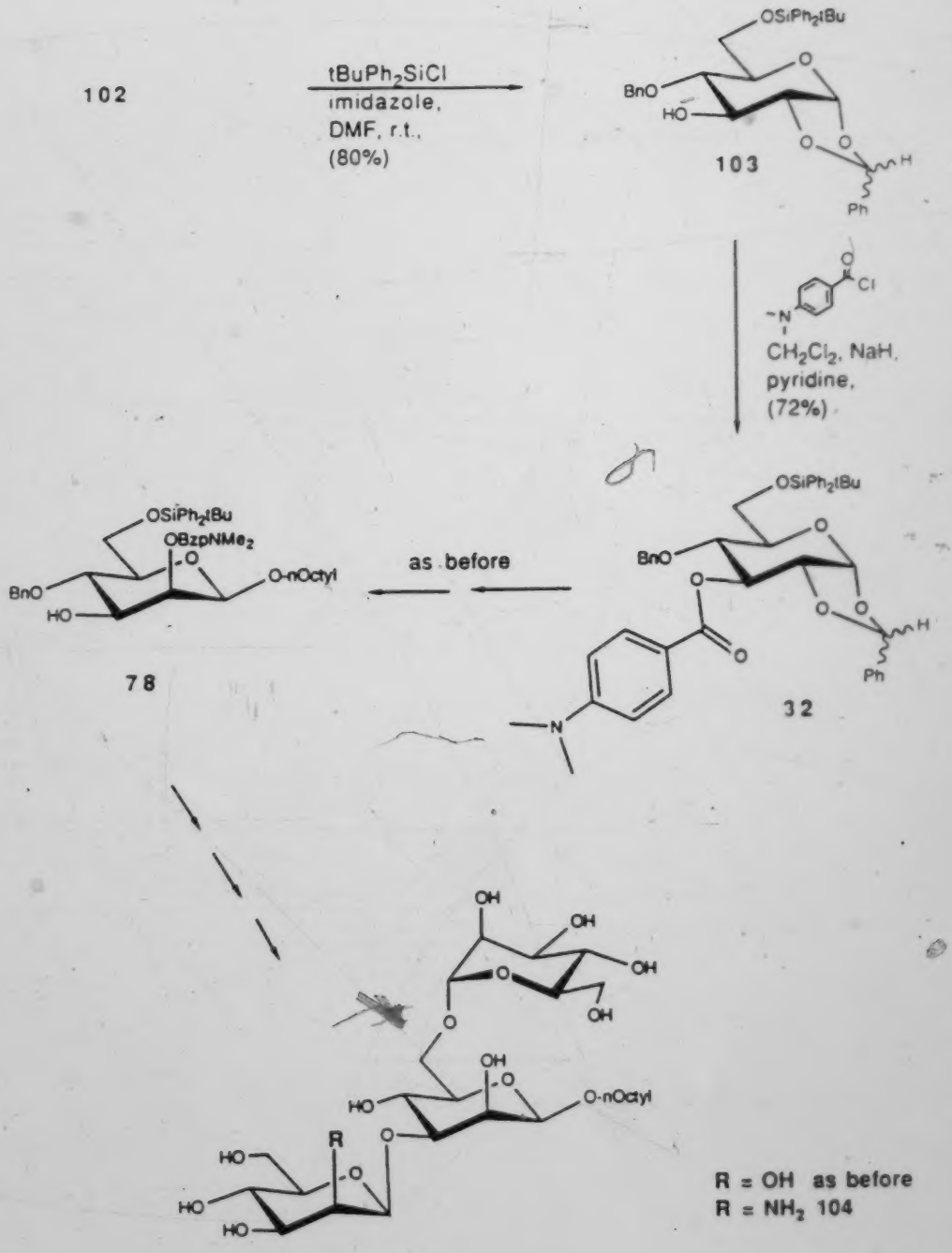
The *p*-anisoyl group was not suitable for the synthesis of the β - mannosides in the inversion reaction due to the extensive side product formation and thus the original *p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl derivatives remained the better alternative. Since the inverted mannoside with the unprotected 3 hydroxyl group would be a very useful intermediate for the construction of the mannose rich core of asparagine linked oligosaccharides, it was considered important to determine if **78** could be glycosylated. To investigate this glycosidation a larger amount of the mannoside **78** had to be obtained and the previous approach was judged to be too tedious and low yielding for this purpose. A new approach was thus developed.

Starting from glucose, the 1,2,3,6-tetra-O-benzoyl derivative **98** could be prepared in 50% yield by a reaction analogous to one described for the glycoside using four equivalents of benzoyl chloride in the presence of pyridine and triethylamine in dichloromethane at 0 °C (109,110). Acidic benzylation (71) with benzyloxy 2,2,2-trichloroacetimidate and trace trifluoromethanesulfonic acid in dichloromethane : cyclohexane (1 : 2) at 40 °C provided **99** in 45 % yield. It was essential to use very little acid due to the

sensitivity of the anomeric benzoyl group and therefore to accelerate the reaction by increasing the temperature rather than the acid concentration.



The benzoate **99** could be transformed into the bromide **100** in 79 % yield using HBr in glacial acetic acid (111) and dichloromethane at 0 °C. Some hydrolysis was always observed since no acetic anhydride could be added to the HBr solution because the acetoxonium ion formed in the solution would cleave the benzyl group by acetolysis. The bromide (**100**) was converted to the 1,2-O-benzylidene derivative **101**, which was directly debenzoylated under Zemplen conditions to provide **102** in 71 % yield overall. Silylation (65,66) of **102** using *t*-butyldiphenylchlorosilane and imidazole in dry DMF gave 81 % of **103**. Acylation of the 3 hydroxyl group proved to be more difficult than expected. The use of *p*-N,N-dimethylbenzoyl chloride in pyridine containing traces of DMAP (80) at room temperature or 40 °C did not produce any product. Only when the mixture was heated to 80 °C, some (about 20 % after 12 hrs ) product was formed but the reaction was accompanied by decomposition. It was therefore decided to add sodium hydride to the reaction mixture to deprotonate the hydroxyl group. The products now started to form even at room temperature and no side reaction was observed. When the reaction was repeated without pyridine, the *p*-N,N-dimethylbenzoyl group was demethylated to provide about 5 to 10 % of 3-O-*p*-methylaminobenzoyl derivative (*p*-**$CH_3$**HNBz, d,$\delta$ = 2.877 p.p.m., $J_{H,CH_3}$=4 Hz, int = 3 H; *p*-$CH_3$HNBz, d broad, $\delta$ = 4.253 p.p.m.) and the reaction was therefore performed using pyridine and sodium hydride to give **32** in 72 % yield. This product was slightly impure due to the presence of a yellow byproduct which could be removed by chromatography only after debenzylidenation of **32** to **34** with 90% trifluoroacetic acid. Aqueous co-evaporation of the crude **34** to remove the benzaldehyde prior to chromatography had to be abandoned as it was accompanied by extensive decomposition of **34**. The synthesis now proceeded as before to finally provide **78** again.




R = OH as before

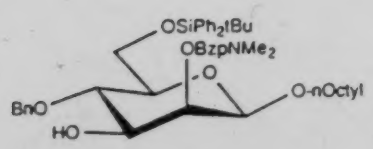
Compound **78** is a potentially very versatile intermediate for the synthesis of oligosaccharides found in the mannose core of asparagine linked carbohydrates, which have the general structure **(3),** because the 2, 3 and 6 positions are differentially accessible. Ideally, the 4-O-benzyl group should be replaced with an allyl group to allow independent access to the 4 position as well, but in this study the benzyl group had been chosen above other groups to minimize further interference in an already complicated system.

It was thus decided to investigate if **78** could be glycosidated or if again the *p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl group would interfere. Although the original α-D-mannopyranosyl-(1→3 )-β-D-mannopryanoside could have been synthesized, we chose to prepare a 2-amino-2-deoxy-α-D-mannopyranosyl-(1→3)-β-D-mannopyranoside analogue instead because it would be useful in an initial investigation into the acceptance of such substrates by the enzyme GlcNAcT I.

It was decided to use 3,4,6,-tri-O-acetyl-2-deoxy-2-phthalimido-α-D-mannopyranosyl bromide **105** to introduce a 2-amino -2-deoxy-D-mannopyranosyl group α linked to the 3 position of **78**. Although to our knowledge a 2-deoxy-2-phthalimido-mannopyranosyl donor had not been used in such a manner previously, it was expected that it should behave similarly to the 2-deoxy-2-phthalimido glucopyranose analogue and introduce the alcohol trans to the 2-O-phthalimido group, thus yielding predominantly the α -mannoside.

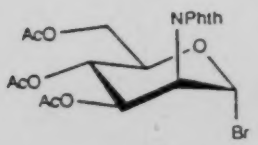
Although there is a standard literature procedure (112) for the formation of 2-phthalimido derivatives of glucosamine, the yields were found to be generally poor and difficult to reproduce in the hands of several coworkers in our research group. A new approach was therefore devised for the mannose derivatives, as mannosamine hydrochloride is much more expensive than

glucosamine hydrochloride and low yields were therefore less acceptable. The new reaction conditions were first tested on 2-amino-2-deoxy-D-glucopyranose and then applied to 2-amino-2-deoxy-D-mannopyranose.



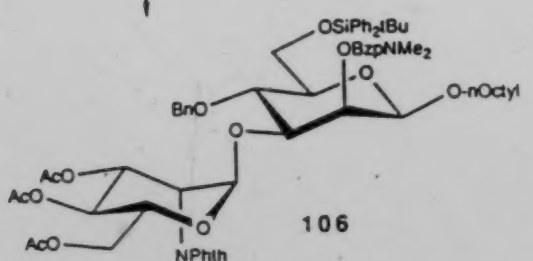

78

+




105

$AgO_3SCF_3$,
lutidine, $CH_2Cl_2$
r.t., 4A molec. sieves

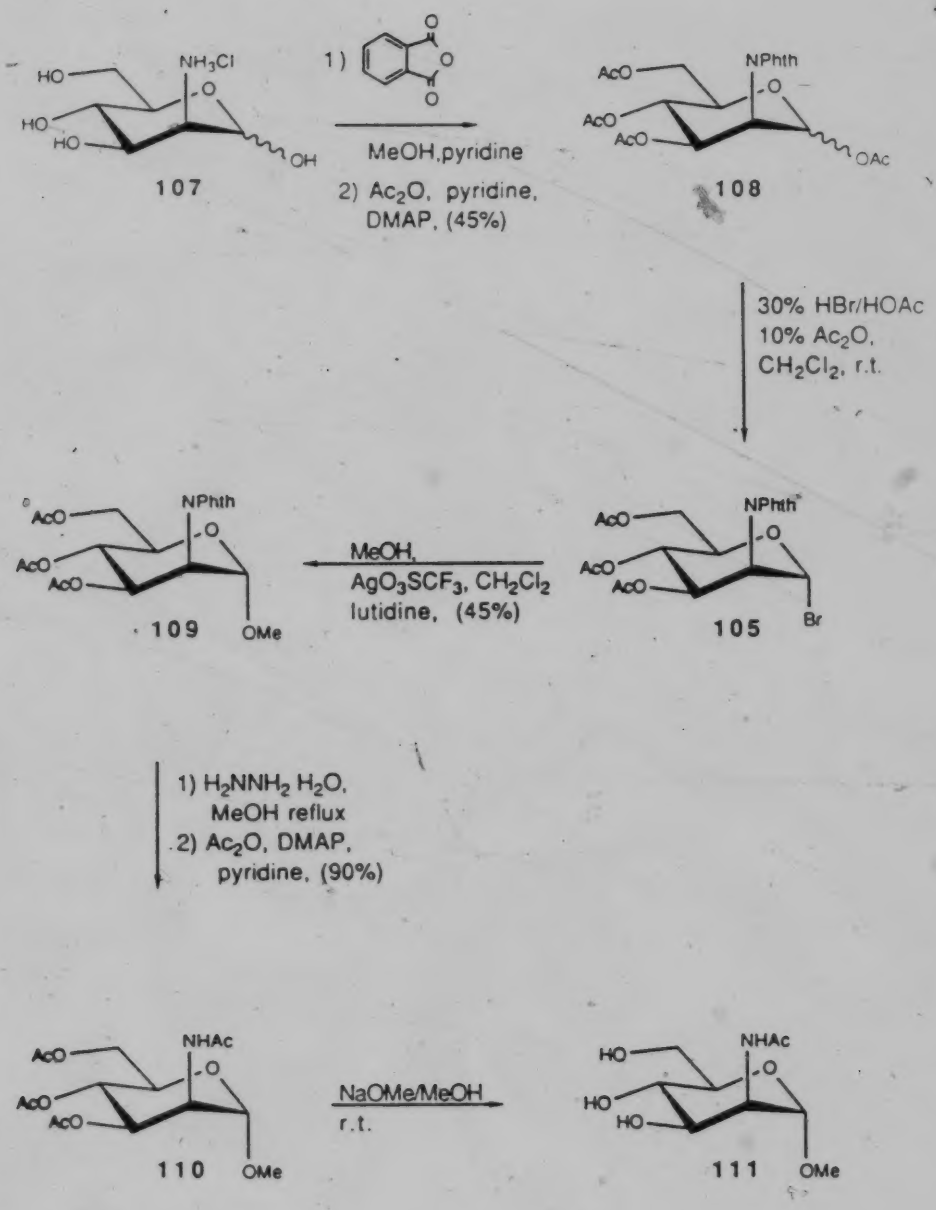



106

Mannosamine hydrochloride **107** was dissolved in methanol : pyridine (2 : 1) containing 1 equivalent of triethylamine. Three equivalents of phthalic anhydride were added and after about 10 minutes of reaction a ninhydrin positive spot was no longer observable by t.l.c. The crude reaction mixture was diluted with dichloromethane and the product was extracted into the water

layer. After evaporation of water and repeated co-evaporation with toluene, the product was treated with excess acetic anhydride and DMAP in pyridine to provide **108**. On a 100 mg scale 96 % of the product **108** was obtained after chromatography, but on a larger scale (0.8 g) only 45 % could be recovered from the column. There seems to have been extensive crystallization of the almost pure product on the column. Since the objective was to obtain a sufficient amount of the phthalimido-mannose derivative, the reaction was only performed once on the larger scale and was therefore not optimized. Phthalimido-glucose derivatives are now being prepared routinely in 70 % yields for the large scale reactions in the laboratory using this procedure. The acetate **108** was transformed into the bromide **105** by the use of HBr in glacial acetic acid and used without chromatography in the following glycosidation.

Alcohol **78** (10 mg) was reacted with the bromide **105** using silver triflate in dichloromethane and lutidine (74) to provide the disaccharide **106**. Only a small amount of **106** was obtained in pure form after chromatography due to the presence of the 1 : 1 adduct formed by condensation of the bromide with its hydrolysis product which had similar chromatographic mobility. The $^1$H-n.m.r. spectrum of **106** showed all the signals for the protons of the two rings, but the coupling constants of the sugar ring phthalimido-mannose protons of **106** as well as of **108** and **105** were much larger than normal ($J_{1,2}$= 3 - 5 Hz instead of the usual 0 - 1 Hz, see table 5) and the chemical shifts of some of the ring protons in **108** and **105** were shifted dramatically downfield. The formation of α-mannosidic linkages using **105** should be favoured by factors such as the anomeric effect, steric hindrance to attack from above by the axial hydroxyl group and the possibility of neighboring group participation from the phthalimido group. Since the pyranose ring in **105** was apparently distorted ($J_{1,2}$= 3.5 Hz, $J_{2,3}$= 5.0 Hz), the configuration of the newly formed glycosidic


NH3Cl
HO
HO
HO
OH
107
1)
MeOH,pyridine
2) Ac2O, pyridine,
DMAP, (45%)
NPhth
AcO
AcO
AcO
OAc
108
30% HBr/HOAc
10% Ac2O,
CH2Cl2, r.t.
NPhth
AcO
AcO
AcO
109
OMe
MeOH,
AgO3SCF3, CH2Cl2
lutidine, (45%)
NPhth
AcO
AcO
AcO
105
Br
1) H2NNH2 H2O,
MeOH reflux
2) Ac2O, DMAP,
pyridine, (90%)
NHAc
AcO
AcO
AcO
110
OMe
NaOMe/MeOH
r.t.
NHAc
HO
HO
HO
111
OMe

linkage in **106** had to be questioned. The reason for this distortion of the pyranose ring is due to the presence of the phthalimido group and can easily be visualized using an ordinary molecular model. In a perfect chair conformation the carbonyls of the phthalimido group are either interacting with the lone pair of the ring oxygen or with the axial H-4, causing the ring to distort to avoid such interaction. The model also indicates that it is likely that one of the carbonyls has to be aligned parallel to H-1 causing its chemical shift to move downfield in the n.m.r. spectra. A model study using methanol was therefore performed to provide insight into the glycosidation reaction with the bromide **105**.

Bromide **105** was reacted with methanol and silver trifluoromethanesulfonate under the same conditions as were applied during the formation of the disaccharide **106** (74) to provide the methyl glycoside **109** in 45 % isolated yield (based on **105**). The methyl glycoside **109** showed the same unusual shifts and coupling constants as the acetate **108** and bromide **105** (see table 5). Table 6 shows the $^{13}C$ chemical shifts and the one bond C-1 - H-1 coupling constants for all derivatives formed during the model study.

A coupling constant of 170 Hz or greater is usually taken to indicate an α-mannosidic linkage, but the effect of ring distortion on this coupling constant was not known. Indeed ring distortion was seen to have a dramatic effect on the $C_1$-$H_1$ coupling constant in the distorted 4,6-O-benzylidene-2,3,-O-carbonate-β-D-mannopyranoside where it was found to be about 170 Hz for the β-mannoside (61). The methyl mannoside **109** was therefore deprotected and re-acetylated to provide compound **110** in 90% yield using hydrazine hydrate in refluxing methanol followed treatment with acetic anhydride in pyridine. As can be seen from table 5, the proton chemical shifts and coupling

Table 5 : $^1H$ n.m.r. Data for Compounds **108 - 111** in $CDCl_3$ and * in $CD_3OD$

| Nucleus | 108 (major) | 108 (minor) | 105 | 109 | 110 | 111* | α-OMe* (std) | β-OMe* (std) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| $H_1$ ($J_{12}$) | 6.589 (3.8) | 6.006 (2.8) | 6.813 (3.5) | 5.270 (3.9) | 4.667 (1.5) | 4.557 (1.2) | 4.565 (1.3) | 4.513 (1.5) |
| $H_2$ ($J_{23}$) | 4.895 (5.2) | 5.073 (6.8) | 5.220 (5.0) | 4.859 (5.0) | 4.620 (4.5) | 4.273 (4.8) | 4.280 (5.0) | 4.427 (4.8) |
| $H_3$ ($J_{34}$) | 5.503 (6.8) | 5.478 (9.5) | 5.680 (6.8) | 5.462 (6.5) | 5.323 (10.0) | 3.880 (9.5) | 3.888 (9.5) | 3.625 (9.5) |
| $H_4$ ($J_{45}$) | 5.562 (8.0) | 6.064 (10.0) | 5.587 (9.0) | 5.517 (7.8) | 5.100 (10.0) | 3.560 (10.0) | 3.567 (10.0) | 3.487 (9.5) |
| $H_5$ ($J_{56}$) | 4.232 (6.0) | 3.94 (6.2) | 4.49-4.26 | 4.167 (6.5) | 3.977 (5.5) | 3.483 (3.2) | 3.490 (3.5) | 3.220 (3.0) |
| $H_6$ ($J_{66'}$) | 4.451 (12.0) | 4.484 (12.0) | 4.49-4.26 | 4.484 (3.3) | 4.287 (2.2) | 3.800 (3.2) | 3.807 (3.2) | 3.840 (3.0) |
| $H_{6'}$ ($J_{56'}$) | 4.315 (3.0) | 4.273 (3.0) | 4.49-4.26 | 4.293 (12.0) | 4.080 (12.0) | 3.800 (0) | 3.807 (0) | 3.840 (0) |
| OAc (NAc) | 2.155,2.135, 2.105, 1.952 | 2.166,2.066, 1.91, 11.952 | 2.17,2.12, 1.96 | 1.955,2.090, 2.160 | 2.22, 2.07, 1.99 | 2.00 | 2.00 | 2.00, 1.96 |
| OMe | n.a. | n.a. | n.a. | 3.420 | 3.40 | 3.350 | 3.357 | 3.457 |
| NH ($J_{H2}$) | n.a. | n.a. | n.a. | n.a. | 5.860 (9.0) | n.a. | n.a. | n.a. |
| Phth | 7.9 - 7.7 | 7.95 - 7.7 | 8.0 - 7.7 | 7.9 -7.7 | n.a. | n.a. | n.a. | n.a. |

**Table 6** : $^{13}C$ - n.m.r. Data for Compounds **109 - 111** in $CDCl_3$ and * $CD_3OD$

| Nucleus | 109 | 110 | 111* | α-OMe* std | β-OMe* std |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| C1 ($J_{CH}$) | 97.60 (171.6) | 100.16 (172.0) | 101.71 (170.8) | 101.72 (171.0) | 101.89 (160.0) |
| C=O (acetyl ) | 170.73,169.84, 169.71 | 170.55,170.77, 169.94, 169.87 | 174.00 | 174.00 | 174.65 |
| C=O (Phth) | 167.90 | n.a. | n.a. | n.a. | n.a. |
| C6 ($J_{CH}$) | 62.73 (147) | 62.55 (148) | 62.25 (142) | 62.26 | 61.86 |
| $CH_3O$ ($J_{CH}$) | 55.38 (143.4) | 55.29 (143.0) | 55.24 (142.9) | 55.25 | 56.96 (143.1) |

**Table 7 :** $^{1}H$ and $^{13}C$ - n.m.r. data for Compounds **106**, **112**, **113** and **121**

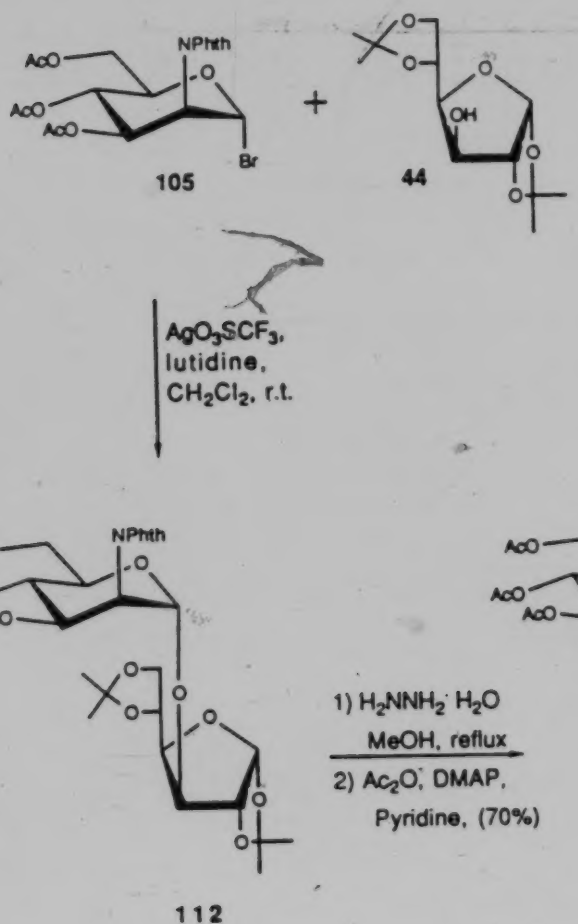
| Nucleus | 106 | 112 | 113 | 121 |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| H-1 ($J_{12}$) | 4.579 (0) | 5.832 (3.2) | 5.935 (3.8) | n.d. |
| H-2 ($J_{23}$) | 5.204 (0) | 4.744 (0) | 4.607 (0) | 5.513 (3) |
| H-3 ($J_{34}$) | 3.043 (9.5) | n.d. | n.d. | n.d. (9.5) |
| H-4 ($J_{45}$) | 4.162 (9.5) | n.d. | n.d. | 4.04 (9) |
| H-5 ($J_{56}$) | n.d. | n.d. | n.d. | 3.257 (-) |
| H-6 ($J_{66'}$) | n.d. | n.d. | n.d. | n.d. |
| H-6' ($J_{56'}$) | n.d. | n.d. | n.d. | n.d. |
| H'-1 ($J_{12}$) | 4.248 (3) | 5.895 (5.2) | 5.076 (1.5) | 5.720 (3.5) |
| H'-2 ($J_{23}$) | 5.301 (7.5) | 4.820 (4.5) | 4.659 (4.5) | 4.937 (5) |
| H'-3 ($J_{34}$) | 5.664 (9.5) | 5.337 (4.5) | 5.273 (10) | 5.353 (7) |
| H'-4 ($J_{45}$) | 5.859 (10) | 5.258 (7.5) | 5.067 (10) | 5.415 (9) |
| H'-5 ($J_{56}$) | 4.840 (2) | n.d. (7.5) | n.d. | n.d. |
| H'-6 ($J_{66'}$) | n.d. | 4.451 (12) | n.d. | n.d. |
| H'-6' ($J_{56'}$) | n.d. (2) | 4.296 (3) | n.d. | n.d. |
| OAc | 2.20,2.04,1.83 | 2.16,2.12,2.00 | 2.12,2.07,2.04,1.99 | 2.22,2.16,2.08,1.92 |
| NH ($J_{2H}$) | n.a. | n.a. | 5.648 (9) | n.a. |
| C-1 ($J_{CH}$) | n.d. | 105.37 (183) | n.d. | 98.62 (153.9) |
| C'-1 ($J_{CH}$) | n.d. | 97.12 (175) | n.d. | 98.92 (175 [a]) |
| C-6 ($J_{CH}$) | n.d. | 63.03 [a] | n.d. | 62.87 (148)[a] |
| C-6' ($J_{CH}$) | n.d. | 67.43 [a] | n.d. | 62.57 (145)[a] |

**a** could be interchanged; **n.a.** not applicable; **n.d.** not determined due to signal complexity and overlap

constants of **110** are close to the normal values expected for mannopyranosides ($J_{1,2}$= 1.5 Hz, $J_{2,3}$= 4.5 Hz), indicating a decrease in the ring distortion. Again, using a molecular model it was easily seen that the 2-acetamido group could be positioned perpendicular to the ring bringing the NH bond into perfect hydrogen bond distance to the ring oxygen' s lone pair. I..eraction between H-4 and the acetamido group are then minimized, allowing the ring to adopt a chair configuration. Interestingly, although there are large changes in the chemical shifts and coupling constants of the proton n.m.r. spectra, the $^{13}C$ chemical shifts and coupling constants are affected only very slightly (see table 6, compounds **109** and **110**).

The derivative **110** was then deacetylated using sodium methoxide in methanol to provide **111**, which could be compared to standards of methyl 2-acetamido-2-deoxy-α-D-mannopyranoside and methyl 2-acetamido-2-deoxy-β-D-mannopyranoside, which had been graciously provided by Dr. H. Paulsen. As can be seen in table 5, the spectral data of **111** match perfectly with the ones recorded for the α -mannoside standard and it thus appeared that the distortion of the pyranoside ring has no bearing on the preferential formation of the α-glycosidic linkage formation when using the bromide **105** under these conditions. Furthermore as the C-1/H-1 coupling constant in this case is quite unaffected by either changes in protecting groups or even ring distortion, it should be possible to predict the conformation of the glycosidic linkage from the C-1/H-1 coupling constant of the protected sugar in the future. To make quite sure that these observations would also apply to a disaccharide compound **112** was synthesized from di-O-isopropylidene-glucose **44** and the bromide **105** under the usual reaction conditions (74). There are some similarities between the proton spectra of **112** and **109**, but no direct conclusions can be drawn from them as to the nature of the glycosidic

linkage. The proton coupled $^{13}C$ n.m.r. spectra of **112** however confirmed again the presence of an α-mannosidic linkage by providing a C-1/H-1coupling constant of 175 Hz. Upon removal of the phthalimido group and acetylation to produce compound **113**, the $^{1}H$- spectral data compared well with those of **110**.

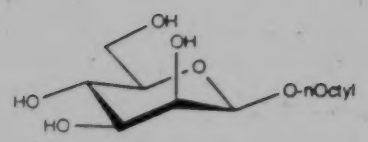



The $^{1}H$-n.m.r. spectral data of **109** and **112** were compared with those of **106**, but no conclusions could be drawn from the comparison with regards to

the nature of the glycosidic linkage as the spectrum of **106** showed little similarity with either **112** or **109**.

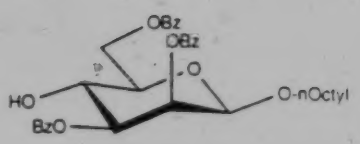
We were very interested in obtaining the octyl 3-O-(2-amino-2-deoxy-α-D-mannopyranosyl)-β-D-mannopyranoside to allow initial tests to be performed with the target enzyme, N-acetylglucosamine transferase I, as it was important to find out if the amino analogue of the native disaccharide would be accepted by the enzyme before setting out to synthesize more complicated structures. As the synthesis of **106** was difficult and time consuming, we chose to synthesize the 2-O-acetyl analogue **121** from octyl-β-D-mannopyranoside **114** instead. It was also hoped that the $^1$H-n.m.r. spectrum of **106** could be compared to that of **121** thus providing insight into the anomeric linkage of **106**.

n-Octyl β-D-mannopyranoside **114** was prepared from 1-iodoacetate and 2,3,4,6-tetra-O-acetyl-α/β-D-mannopyranose using silver oxide according to the published procedure (113). The product was then tribenzoylated using 3 equivalents of benzoyl chloride in pyridine (109) at -10 °C to provide **115** in 78 % yield. The tribenzoate **115** was next benzylated (71) to provide **116**, which was not isolated, but directly debenzoylated using sodium methoxide in methanol to provide **117** in 71 % yield over the two steps. No attempt was made to isolate **116** because the chromatographic purification is difficult at this stage due to large amounts of benzyl alcohol and similar contaminants which co-elute with the product. Silylation of **117** using *t*-butyldiphenylchlorosilane and imidazole provided **118** in 84 % yield. Using triethylorthoacetate and *p*-toluenesulfonic acid the diol **118** was transformed into the 2,3 orthoester, which upon treatment with acetic acid at 0 °C provided the axial acetate **119** (22) and the 3-O-acetate **120** in a 5 : 2 ratio. Migration of the acetate from the 2 to the 3 position during chromatography could be



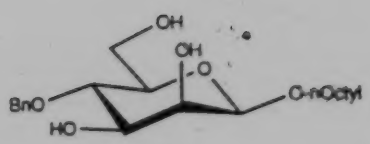

114

3 equiv. BzCl
pyridine,
-10 °C,
(78%)



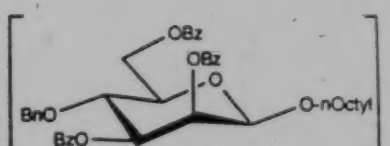

115

$BnOCNHCCl_3$,
$CF_3SO_3H$, r.t.,
$CH_2Cl_2$ : cyclohexane
(1 : 2)



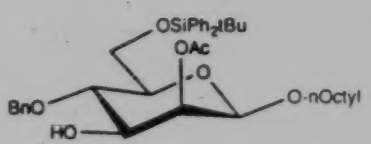

117

NaOMe/MeOH
r.t., (71% over
2 steps)

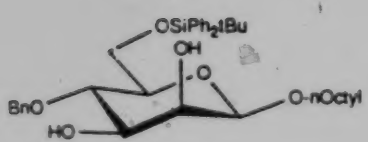



116

$tBuPh_2SiCl$
imidazole
DMF, 0 °C
(84%)




119

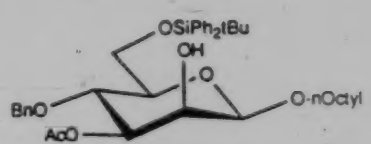



118

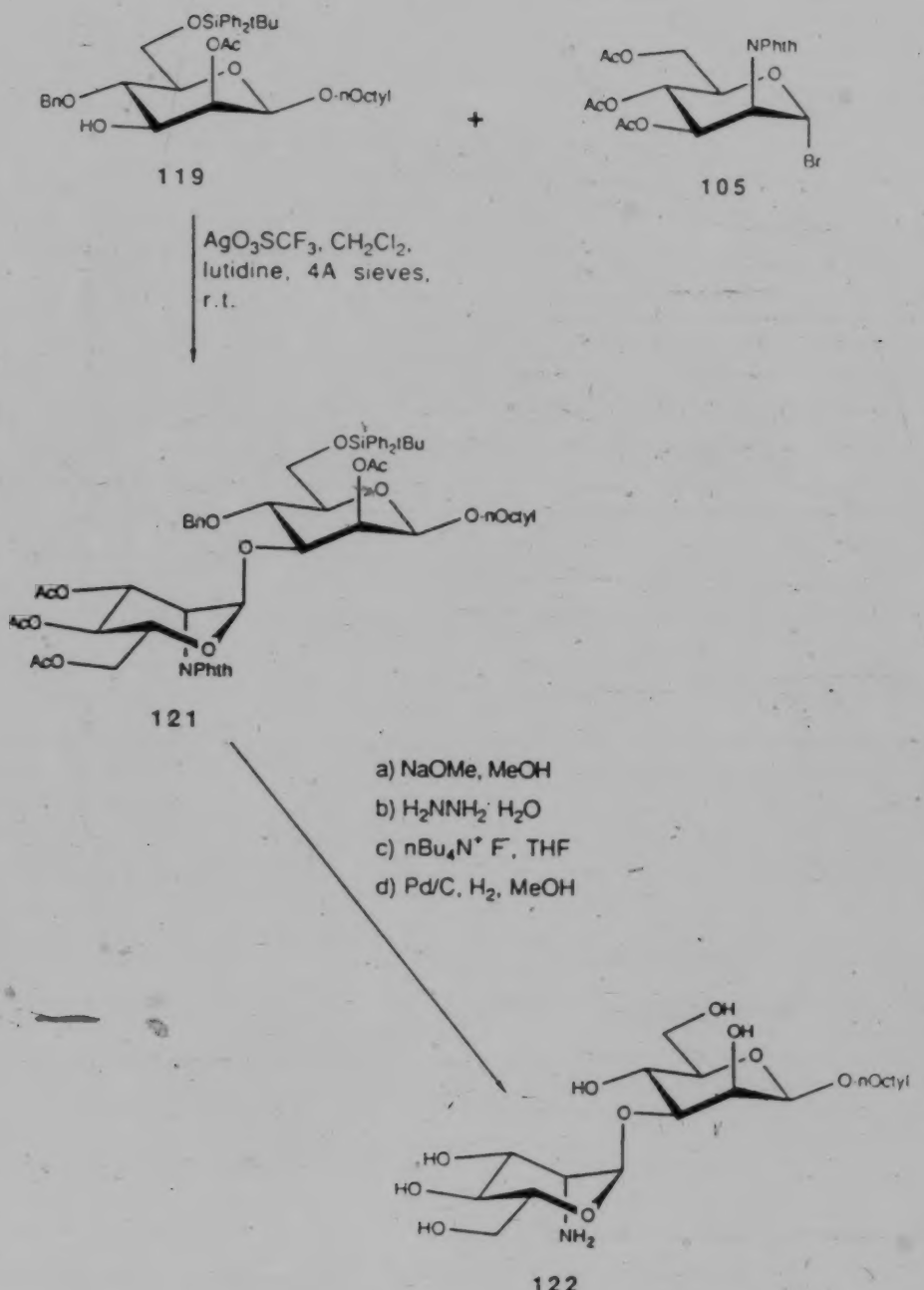
1) $(EtO)_3CCH_3$,
pTsOH

2) 80% AcOH

+




120


OSiPh2tBu
OAc
BnO
HO
O-nOctyl
119
+
AcO
AcO
AcO
NPhth
105
AgO3SCF3, CH2Cl2,
lutidine, 4A sieves,
r.t.
121
a) NaOMe, MeOH
b) H2NNH2 · H2O
c) nBu4N+ F-, THF
d) Pd/C, H2, MeOH
122

prevented by addition of trace acetic acid to the eluent and the two products **119** and **120** were isolated in 64 % and 24 % respectively. The 3 hydroxy-derivative **119** was next glycosidated using the 2-phthalimido-mannopyranosyl bromide **105** and silver trifluoromethanesulfonate in the presence of lutidine to provide the disaccharide **121** in 50 % isolated yield. The proton coupled $^{13}C$-nmr data of **121** showed a $C_1$-$H_1$ coupling constant of 175 Hz indicating that the two mannose residues are α-linked. The suitability of the 2-phthalimido-mannopyranosyl donor **105** for the synthesis of amino-analogs of the core region of Asn-linked oligosaccharides is therefore demonstrated.

Studies on the deprotection of **121** are currently in progress. The attempted deprotection of the *t*-butyldiphenylsilyl group with tetrabutylammonium fluoride in dry THF according to the literature procedure (65) caused unexpected side reactions, which most likely involved the acetate and phthalimido groups since re-acetylation with acetic anhydride regenerated largely starting material. The current approach to deprotection therefore involves initial deacetylation using Zemplen conditions (54), followed by removal of the phthalimido group with hydrazine hydrate (112) in refluxing methanol, then desilylation with tetrabutylammonium fluoride in dry THF (65) and finally debenzylation by hydrogenation with palladium on carbon (37,114) to provide the unprotected disaccharide **122**.

## Conclusion :

The formation of β-mannosidic linkages by intramolecular inversion was investigated, but the yields obtained were rather modest and the method in its present form will not be able to compete with the already existing methods described in the introduction. The 1,2-migration of the ring oxygen (ring contraction) will remain a problem if temperatures higher than about 40 °C are required for the inversion. Although a more reactive nucleophile could possibly overcome this problem, new difficulties might arise during neighboring group assisted glycosidations since the reactive nucleophile might invert the 2 position during this reaction by attack on the intermediate acyloxonium ion (59). Glycosidation without neighboring group participation would not be useful as the yields of β-glycoside would drastically decline when more hindered alcohols are used (21).

Another problem remaining is the selective deprotection of OH-2 of the β-glycoside especially since activated esters, such as the chloroacetyl group, might not be suitable due to the resistance of their orthoesters towards rearrangement. Introduction of the nucleophile after glycosidation into a 2,3 unprotected glucoside led almost exclusively to 2-O-acylation, when unreactive large acylating agents such as *p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl chloride were used. Therefore introduction of the nucleophile after the glycosidation step might require several synthetic steps which would render the method inapplicable to the introduction of β-mannosyl residues into larger oligosaccharide structures.

The use of 4,6-O-benzylidenated glucosides in the inversion reactions prevents the 1,2 migration of the ring oxygen, as was seen by Kunz et al., as well as in the model reactions using compounds **23** and **82.** It might therefore

be desirable to introduce the glucopyranosyl moiety as a 4,6-benzylidene derivative or similarly constrained system, then invert the 2 position and finally try to modify the 4,6 ring in such a manner that it can liberate O-4 or O-6 selectively. Methods (115-117) are already available for the selective opening of 4,6,-O-benzylidene rings, but their application to complicated oligosaccharide structures containing sensitive glycosidic linkages may cause new complications.

Attempts to use intramolecular inversion for the formation of β-mannosidic linkages should not be abandoned, as the method is potentially very useful and may be eventually applicable to complex structures and block synthesis. The present work shows, however, that it will be much more difficult to find conditions that will avoid all the presently discovered downfalls and not create new ones.

The stable orthoacyl fluoride which was described in this work is potentially useful for the investigation of reaction mechanisms. For example, it might be possible to now investigate anomeric orthoacid decomposition, starting with a well described system where the initial amount of orthoacid present in solution is well known from the concentration of the orthoacyl fluoride. The use of chloroacetylated glycosides might also provide more stable orthoacyl fluorides, which mignt be isolable. Furthermore the solvent dependence of the formation of orthoacylfluorides might provide insight into the factors governing reaction pathways in different solvents and thus allow more informed decisions towards the solvents used in glycosidation reactions. Solvents seem to have profound effects on glycosidations as seen also in the work of Sinay (103) and Wulff et al. (91,92).

Finally, the use of 2-phthalimido-mannosyl donors to attach mannosamine residues to glycosyl acceptors is a useful alternative to the use

of 2-azidomannosyl donors. The phthalimido group does not seem to be compatible with the use of fluoride ion and therefore use of the *t*-butyldiphenylsilyl group should be avoided, as the acidic conditions for its removal are too harsh for the labile β-mannosidic linkage.

Even though the intramolecular inversion was only limited in its success, some of the synthetic procedures developed during the construction of the various mono and disaccharides might prove to be useful in future syntheses.

## Experimental: General Procedures

Optical rotations were measured with a Perkin-Elmer 241 polarimeter at ambient temperature. T.l.c was performed on silica gel 60-$F_{254}$ (Merck) with detection by quenching of fluorescence and/or charring with sulfuric acid. Unless otherwise noted all chromatography was performed on Silica gel 60 (Merck, 40-63 μm mesh size). All reagents were of reagent or better quality and were from various suppliers. $^1H$ n.m.r. spectra were recorded at 300, 360, or 400 (Bruker spectrometers) and 500 MHz (Varian spectrometer) on solutions in the indicated deuterated solvent with $Me_4Si$ as the internal standard unless otherwise noted. $^{13}C$ n.m.r spectra were recorded at 75.5 MHz. The chemical shifts and coupling constants (as observed splittings) for $^1H$ n.m.r. resonances are reported as though they were first order. Microanalyses were carried out by the Analytical Services Laboratory of this department and samples were prepared as follows : Chromatographed products were pure by n.m.r.spectroscopy and were dried on the pump for several days and then submitted for elemental analysis. If a low carbon analysis was obtained the sample was dried further (with and without heating depending on the stability of the product) and analysis was attempted again. Failure to provide correct analysis after two dryings led to rechromatography and subsequent reanalysis of the samples.

**Methyl 4,6-*O*-benzylidene-3-*O*-*p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl-β-D-glucopyranoside (23) and Methyl 4,6-*O*-benzylidene-2-*O*-*p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl-β-D-glucopyranoside (24)**

Compound **22** (Methyl 4,6-*O*-benzylidne-β-D-glucopyranoside) (2.44 g, 8.60 mmol) was dissolved in 9 mL of pyridine and 1.52 g (8.28 mmol) of *p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl chloride and trace 4-dimethylaminopyridine were added. The reaction mixture was heated to 80 °C. After 2 hours 0.38 g (2.07 mmol) more acid chloride was added to the reaction mixture. The reaction mixture was stirred at 80 °C for a further 18 hours and then worked up. Pyridine was removed *in vacuo* and the residue co-evaporated with toluene. The remaining residue was taken up in dichloromethane and extracted with water. The organic layer was evaporated and column chromatography of the residue (ethyl acetate : hexane 1 : 1) provided **23** (0.8 g, 22%) and **24** (1.10 g, 29%); $R_f$ = 0.26 (**23**), 0.50 (**24**) (ethyl acetate : hexane 1 : 1).

**23** $[\alpha]_D^{22}$ = -310.9° (c 0.1, dichloromethane) .

**23** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 7.95 (m, 2H, ortho **H**, p$Me_2$NBz), 7.43 (m, 2H, aromatic), 7.33 (m, 3H, aromatic), 6.62 (m, 2H, meta **H**, p$Me_2$NBz), 5.54 (s, 1H, $C_6H_5CHO_2$), 5.357 (t, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{23}$ = 10 Hz, $J_{34}$ = 9 Hz) 4.452 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 7.7 Hz), 4.390 (dd, 1H, $H_6$, $J_{66'}$ = 10.5 Hz, $J_{65}$ = 8 Hz), 3.823 (t, 1H, $H_{6'}$, $J_{66'}$ = 10.5 Hz, $J_{56'}$ = 10 Hz), 3.803 (t, 1H, $H_4$, $J_{34}$ = 9 Hz, $J_{45}$ = 10 Hz), 3.680 (dd, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{12}$ = 7.9 Hz, $J_{23}$ = 10 Hz), 3.592 (s, 3H, $OCH_3$), 3.570 (ddd, 1H, $H_5$, $J_{56'}$ = 10 Hz, $J_{56}$ = 5 Hz, $J_{45}$ = 10 Hz), 3.407 (broad, 1H, OH), 3.00 (s, 6H, $N(CH_3)_2$); $^{13}$C-n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 167.68 (**C**O), 110.66 ($(CH_3)_2NC_6H_5$, ortho **C**), 104.81 ($C_6H_5CHO_2$), 101.38 ($C_1$), 68.73 ($C_6$), 57.60 ($OCH_3$), 40.00 ($N(CH_3)_2$).

Anal. calc. for **23** ($C_{23}H_{27}NO_7$): C, 64.34; H, 6.29; N, 3.26. Found : C, 64.20; H, 6.24; N, 3.08.

**Methyl 4,6-*O*-benzylidene-3-*O*-*p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl-β-D-mannopyranoside (25) and Methyl 4,6-*O*-benzylidene-2-*O*-*p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl-β-D-mannopyranoside (26)**

Compound **23** (0.11 g, 0.26 mmol) was dissolved in 3 mL of pyridine - dichloromethane (1 : 19) and cooled to 0 °C. When the solution had achieved this temperature 45 μL (0.27 mmol) of trifluoromethanesulfonic anhydride was added. The reaction mixture was stirred for 2 hours and then a further 60 μL of trifluoromethanesulfonic anhydride was added. After one more hour at 0 °C the trifluoromethanesulfonate had formed quantatively by t.l.c. ($R_f$ = 0.5, [ethyl acetate : hexane, 1:2]). The reaction mixture was then diluted with dichloromethane and extracted with water. The organic layer was dried over sodium sulfate and then evaporated *in vacuo*. The residue was taken up in 500 μL of pyridine and 3 mL of DMF and 100 μL of water was added and the reaction mixture was heated to 60° C with stirring. After 1 hour of reaction time the solution was allowed to cool to room temperature and then diluted with dichloromethane and extracted sequentially with water, 1M hydrochloric acid, sodium hydrogen carbonate and water. The organic layer was dried over sodium sulfate and condensed *in vacuo* to provide **26** and **25** in a 2 : 1 ratio. Column chromatography of the residue (ethyl acetate : hexane 1 : 1) provided **26** (27.9 mg); $R_f$ = 0.36 (ethyl acetate : hexane 1 : 1) and **25** (10.5 mg) $R_f$ = 0.25 (ethyl acetate : hexane, 1 : 1).

**25** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 7.98 (m, 2H, ortho **H**, p$Me_2$NBz), 7.50-7.30 (m, 5H, aromatic), , 6.63 (m, 2H, meta **H**, p$Me_2$NBz), 5.595 (s, 1H, $C_6H_5CHO_2$), 5.259 (dd, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 10 Hz), 4.612 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 1 Hz), 4.370 (dd, 1H, $H_6$, $J_{65}$ = 5 Hz), 4.365 (dd, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 3.5 Hz), 4.276 (t, 1H, $H_4$, $J_{45}$ = 10 Hz), 3.921 (t, 1H, $H_{6'}$, $J_{66'}$ = 10 Hz), 3.593 (s, 3H, $OCH_3$, anomeric), 3.526 (dt, 1H, $H_5$, $J_{56'}$ = 10 Hz), 3.04 (s, 6H, $N(CH_3)_2$), 2.39 (s broad, 1H, OH)

**26** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 7.98 (m, 2H, ortho **H**, p$Me_2$NBz), 7.70-7.30 (m, 5H, aromatic), , 6.66 (m, 2H, meta **H**, p$Me_2$NBz), 5.688 (dd, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 3.8 Hz), 5.626 (s, 1H, $C_6H_5CHO_2$), 4.629 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 1.2 Hz), 4.412 (dd, 1H, $H_6$, $J_{56}$ = 5 Hz), 4.083 (dt, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 10 Hz), 3.965 (t, 1H, $H_4$, $J_{45}$ = 10 Hz), 3.948 (t, 1H, $H_{6'}$, $J_{66'}$ = 10 Hz), 3.523 (s, 3H, $OCH_3$, anomeric), 3.493 (dt, 1H, $H_5$, $J_{6'5}$ = 10 Hz), 3.04 (s, 6H, $N(CH_3)_2$), 2.566 (d, 1H, OH, $J_{H,OH}$ = 4 Hz).

## 1,2-*O*-Benzylidene-3,4,6-tri-*O*-benzoyl-D-glucopyranose (28)

2,3,4,6 tetra-*O*-benzoyl-D-glucopyranosyl bromide **27** (150 g, 0.228 mol) was dissolved in 450 mL of acetonitrile. To this solution 15 g (0.396 mol) of sodium borohydride and 30 g (8.12 mmol) of tetra-n-butyl-ammonium iodide were added at room temperature. The reaction mixture was stirred for 20 hours at room temperature and then diluted with dichloromethane. The reaction mixture was extracted with ice cold water. The organic layer was dried over sodium sulfate and then reduced *in vacuo* to leave a syrup. The syrup was taken up in dichloromethane and treated with diethyl ether until crystallization of tetra-n-butylammonium iodide occurred. The iodide was filtered off and the mother liquor condensed *in vacuo*. The product (**28**) contained exo (S) and endo (R) 1,2-O-benzylidenes in a ratio of 1 : 3 respectively and was

sufficiently pure to proceed to the next step. $R_f$ = 0.61 (ethyl acetate : hexane 1 : 2).

**28 (exo)** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 6.62 (s, $C_6H_5CHO_2$), 5.960 (d, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 5.2 Hz), 5.783 (t, $H_3$, $J_{23}$ = 4.5 Hz, $J_{34}$ = 4.5 Hz), 5.590 (dd, $H_4$, $J_{34}$ = 4.5 Hz), 4.050 (ddd, $H_5$, $J_{45}$ = 10 Hz, $J_{56}$ = 3 Hz, $J_{56'}$ = 5 Hz)

**28 (endo)** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 8.2-7.2 (m, 20H, aromatic), 5.977 (s, $C_6H_5CHO_2$), 5.910 (d, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 5.2 Hz), 5.560 (ddd, $H_4$, $J_{34}$ = 2 Hz, $J_{45}$ = 9.8 Hz, $J_{24}$ = 1 Hz), 4.65-4.40 (m, $H_2$, $H_5$, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$), 4.487 (ddd, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 3 Hz, $J_{24}$ = 1 Hz)

## 1,2-*O*-Benzylidene-D-glucopyranose (29)

Saturated sodium methoxide in methanol (20 mL) was added to a 1 L solution of crude exo and endo 1,2-*O*-benzylidene-3,4,6-tri-*O*-benzoyl-D-glucose (**28**) in anhydrous methanol (approximately 132 g from above reaction). The reaction mixture was stirred for 24 to 32 hours at room temperature and then treated with the weakly acidic cation exchanger IRC-50 ($H^+$) until the solution was neutral to pre-wetted pH paper. The solution was then filtered to remove the cation exchanger and the filtrate condensed *in vacuo*. The resulting syrup was taken up in dichloromethane and water and the aqueous layer extracted three times with dichloromethane to remove the organic soluble methylbenzoate. The aqueous layer was then concentrated *in vacuo* to leave a white solid (**29**) (46.1 g., 75.6%). 29 was an exo (S) : endo (R) mixture (1 : 3.2). $R_f$ = 0.10 (methanol : dichloromethane 1 : 19).

**29 (exo)** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3OD$): δ 6.37 (s, $C_6H_5CHO_2$), 5.860 (d, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 5 Hz), 4.390 (dd, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 6.2 Hz, $J_{24}$ = 0.7 Hz), 3.993 (dd, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 8 Hz), 3.95-3.68 (m, $H_5$, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$), 3.563 (t, $H_4$, $J_{45}$ = 9 Hz)

**29 (endo)** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3OD$): δ 7.65-7.4 (m, 5H, aromatic), 5.977 (s, $C_6H_5CHO_2$), 5.800 (d, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 5 Hz), 4.323 (dt, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 5 Hz, $J_{24}$ = 0.7 Hz), 4.056 (t, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 4.7 Hz), 3.95-3.68 (m, $H_5$, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$), 3.720 (dd, $H_6$, $J_{56}$ = 5.5 Hz, $J_{66'}$ = 12 Hz), 3.633 (ddd, $H_4$, $J_{45}$ = 9 Hz, $J_{42}$ = 0.7 Hz)

## 1,2-*O*-benzylidene-6-*O*-*t*-butyldiphenylsilyl-D-glucopyranose (30)

Compound **29** (10.13 g, 37.8 mmol) was dissolved in 220 mL of anhydrous DMF and 6.65 g (97.7 mmol) of imidazole was added. The solution was stirred at room temperature and 13 mL (50.1 mmol) of *t*-butyldiphenylchlorosilane was added dropwise.The reaction mixture was stirred for 2 hours at room temperature and then diluted with dichloromethane and extracted with water, saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate and water and then dried over sodium sulfate. The organic layer was concentrated *in vacuo* to leave a syrup. Column chromatography of the residue (methanol : dichloromethane 3 : 97) provided **30** as a foam (2 : 7, exo : endo) (16.73 g, 84.3%), $R_f$ = 0.60 (dichloromethane : methanol 19 : 1).

**30 (exo)** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 7.40 (m, 10H, aromatic diphenylsilyl), 6.27 (s, $C_6H_5CHO_2$), 5.750 (d, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 4.8 Hz), 4.235 (dd, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 5 Hz), 4.1 - 3.8 (complex, $H_3$, $H_4$, $H_5$, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$, $J_{34}$ = 8 Hz), 2.972 (s broad, OH ), 2.813 (s broad, OH ), 1.077 (s, $SiC(CH_3)_3$)

**30 (endo)** $^1H$ n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 7.70 (m, 5H, aromatic), 7.40 (m, 10H, aromatic diphenylsilyl), 5.92 (s, $C_6H_5CHO_2$), 5.790 (d, $H_1$, endo, $J_{12}$ = 5.2 Hz), 4.235 (dd, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 5 Hz), 4.1 - 3.8 (complex, $H_3$, $H_4$, $H_5$, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$, $J_{34}$ = 8 Hz), 2.730 (d, OH, $J_{H,OH}$ = 5.5 Hz ), 2.652 (d, OH, $J_{H,OH}$ = 6 Hz ), 1.065 (s, $SiC(CH_3)_3$); $^{13}C$ n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 102.46 ($C_6H_5CHO_2$), 97.92 ($C_1$), 64.65 ($C_6$), 26.85 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$), 19.27 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$)

Anal. calc. for **30** ($C_{29}H_{34}O_5Si$): C, 68.75; H, 6.76. Found : C, 68.62; H, 6.73

## 1,2-*O*-Benzylidene-6-*O*-*t*-butyldiphenylsilyl-3-*O*-*p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl-D-glucopyranose (31)

Compound **30** (1.82 g, 3.59 mmol) and 0.91 g (3.65 mmol) of di-n-butyltin oxide were refluxed in toluene with azeotropic removal of water for 1 to 2 hours. The reaction mixture was then condensed *in vacuo* and the residue dissolved in 110 mL of anhydrous dioxane. 4 A molecular sieves were added and the reaction mixture was stirred for 10 minutes at room temperature. 0.75 mL (5.46 mmol) triethylamine and 1.00 g (5.38 mmol) *p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl chloride were added. The reaction was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours and then 0.5 g (2.92 mmol) more acid chloride and 0.37 mL (2.65 mmol) triethylamine were added. After 4 to 5 hours of reaction time the solution was filtered and then condensed *in vacuo*. This residue was dissolved in dichloromethane and extracted with saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate, dried over sodium sulfate and the organic layer was concentrated *in vacuo* to leave a residue. Column chromatography of the residue (dichloromethane : ethyl acetate : hexane, 2 : 1 : 9) provided **31** as an exo (S)

and endo (R) mixture (1 : 4, exo : endo) (1.45 g, 61%) isolated as a white foam. $R_f$ = 0.37 (dichloromethane : ethyl acetate : hexane 2 : 1 : 9).

**31 (exo)** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 6.417 (s, $C_6H_5CHO_2$), 5.427 (t, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 4.5 Hz), 4.440 (t, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 4.8 Hz), 4.1-3.87 (m, $H_4$, $H_5$, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$), 3.060 (s, $N(CH_3)_2$), 1.06 (s, $SiC(CH_3)_3$)

**31(endo)** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 7.91 (m, ortho **H**, p-$Me_2$NBz), 7.70 - 7.30 (m, 15H, aromatic), 6.62 (m, meta **H**, p-$Me_2$NBz), 5.910 (s, $C_6H_5CHO_2$), 5.840 (d, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 5 Hz), 5.390 (t, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 2.8 Hz), 4.447 (ddd, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 3 Hz), 4.1 - 3.87 (m, $H_4$, $H_5$, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$), 3.050 (s, $N(CH_3)_2$), 2.783 (d, OH, $J_{3OH}$ = 5 Hz), 1.04 (s, $SiC(CH_3)_3$); $^{13}$C n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 166.4 (**C**O), 102.92 ($C_6H_5$**C**$HO_2$), 96.92 ($C_1$), 64.49 ($C_6$), 40.08 ( N(**C**$H_3$)$_2$), 26.85 (SiC(**C**$H_3$)$_3$), 19.34 (Si**C**$(CH_3)_3$)

Anal. calc. for **31** ($C_{38}H_{43}N0_7Si$): C, 69.80; H, 6.63; N, 2.14. Found : C, 69.83; H, 6.93; N, 2.19.

**4-*O*-Benzyl-1,2-*O*-benzylidene-6-*O*-*t*-butyldiphenylsilyl-3-*O*-*p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl-D-glucopyranose (32) and 3-*O*-Benzyl-1,2-*O*-benzylidene-6-*O*-*t*-butyldiphenylsilyl-4-*O*-*p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl-D-glucopyranose (33)**

a) Compound **85** (1.45 g, 2.22 mmol) was dissolved in 20 mL of DMF : benzylbromide (1 : 1) and cooled to 0 °C. To this solution 0.86 g (35.8 mmol) sodium hydride (80% in oil) was added quickly. The solution was stirred for 10 minutes at 0 °C and then diluted with dichloromethane and extracted with water. The organic layer was dried over sodium sulfate and pyridine was added to destroy the excess benzyl bromide. The disappearance of the benzyl

bromide was monitored by t.l.c. (ethyl acetate : hexane, 1:4; $R_f$ = 0.86 to $R_f$ = 0). Upon completion of the reaction the dichloromethane layer was extracted sequentially with water, 5% hydrochloric acid, saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate and water, dried over sodium sulfate and the organic layer was concentrated *in vacuo* to leave a residue. Column chromatography of the residue (dichloromethane : ethyl acetate : hexane 2.5 : 0.5 : 9) provided **32** (0.59 g., 36%) isolated as a white foam. $R_f$ = 0.32 (dichloromethane : ethyl acetate : hexane 2.5 : 0.5 : 9).

b) Compound **103** (0.21321 g, 0.357 mmol) was dissolved in 7 mL of dichloromethane and 1.4 mL of pyridine. Then 32 mg (1.1 mmol) of sodium hydride (80% in oil) and 0.13 g (0.71 mmol) of *p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoylchloride were added sequentially at room temperature. After 18 hours of reaction at room temperature a few drops of water and acetic acid (pH ≅ 4) was added and the solution was filtered. The filtrate was condensed *in vacuo* and co-evaporated with toluene. The residue was taken up in acetonitrile and extracted with hexane. The acetonitrile layer was condensed *in vacuo*. Column chromatography of the residue (ethyl acetate : hexane 1 : 4) provided **32** (0.19059 g, 72 %) as an endo : exo mixture, $R_f$ = 0.31 (endo), 0.45 (exo) (ethyl acetate : hexane 1 : 4). (Note : After chromatography the product still contained a yellow impurity derived from the *p*-N,N dimethylaminobenzoylchloride.)

**32** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 7.94 (m, 2H, ortho H, p-$Me_2$NBz), 7.70-7.10 (m, 20H, aromatic), 6.637 (m, 2H, meta H, p-$Me_2$NBz), 5.900 (s, 1H, $C_6H_5CHO_2$), 5.883 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 5 Hz), 5.730 (dd, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 1.5 Hz), 4.867 (d, 1H, $C_6H_5CH_2O$, $J_{gem}$ = 12 Hz), 4.487 (d, 1H, $C_6H_5CH_2O$, $J_{gem}$ = 12 Hz), 4.407 (ddd, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 4.8 Hz), 4.070 (ddd, 1H, $H_5$, $J_{56}$ = 4.2 Hz),

3.875 (dt, 1H, **H**$_4$, $J_{45}$ = 9.5 Hz), 3.830 (dd, 1H, **H**$_{6'}$, $J_{56'}$ = 2 Hz), 3.760 (dd, 1H, **H**$_6$, $J_{66'}$ = 11 Hz) $^{13}$C n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 165.44 (**C**O), 103.19 ($C_6H_5\mathbf{C}HO_2$), 96.98 (**C**$_1$), 71.52 ($C_6H_5\mathbf{C}H_2$), 63.67 (**C**$_6$), 40.01 ( $N(\mathbf{C}H_3)_2$), 26.77 ($SiC(\mathbf{C}H_3)_3$), 19.31 ($Si\mathbf{C}(CH_3)_3$)

Anal. calc. for **32** ($C_{45}H_{49}N0_7Si$): C, 72.65; H, 6.64; N, 1.88. Found : C, 73.02; H, 6.88; N, 1.74.

**33** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 7.81 (m, ortho **H**, p-$Me_2$NBz), 7.65 - 7.20 (m, 15H, aromatic), 6.61 (m, meta **H**, p-$Me_2$NBz), 5.901 (s, 1H, $C_6H_5CHO_2$), 5.863 (d, 1H, **H**$_1$, $J_{12}$ = 5 Hz), 5.457 (dt, 1H, **H**$_4$, $J_{45}$ = 9 Hz), 4.987 (d, 1H, $C_6H_5CHO_2$, $J_{gem}$ = 12 Hz), 4.773 (d, 1H, $C_6H_5CHO_2$, $J_{gem}$ = 12 Hz), 4.310 (ddd, 1H, **H**$_2$, $J_{23}$ = 3 Hz, $J_{24}$ = 1 Hz), 4.187 (dt, 1H, **H**$_5$, $J_{56}$ = 4 Hz, $J_{56'}$ = 4 Hz), 4.050 (dd, 1H, **H**$_3$, $J_{34'}$ = 1.5 Hz), 3.777 (d, 2H, **H**$_6$, **H**$_{6'}$), 3.070 (s, $N(CH_3)_2$), 1.00 (s, $SiC(CH_3)_3$)

## 4-*O*-Benzyl-6-*O*-*t*-butyldiphenylsilyl-3-*O*-p-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl-D-glucopyranose (34)

a) Compound **32** (0.59 g, 0.79 mmol) was dissolved in 40 mL of acetonitrile and cooled to 0 °C. To this solution 25 mL of 90 % aqueous trifluoroacetic acid were added slowly. The solution was stirred for 10 minutes at 0 °C and then diluted with dichloromethane and extracted with water, saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate and water, dried over sodium sulfate and the organic layer was concentrated *in vacuo* to leave a residue. This residue was co-evaporated with water/methanol three times to remove benzaldehyde and then with toluene to azeotropically remove water. This

provided **34** as an α/β mixture (ratio α : β, 7.8 : 1) (0.50 g, 96%) isolated as a white foam, $R_f$ = 0.45 (dichloromethane : methanol 19 : 1).

b) Compound **32** (derived from **103**) (0.450 g, 0.605 mmol) was dissolved in 40 mL of dichloromethane and cooled to 0 °C. Then 4 mL of 90 % aqueous trifluoroacetic acid was added. The reaction was stirred at this temperature for 30 minutes and then diluted with dichloromethane and sequentially extracted with water, sodium hydrogen carbonate and water. The organic layer was then dried over sodium sulfate and condensed *in vacuo*. Column chromatography of the residue (dichloromethane : methanol 97 : 3) provided **34** (0.3577 g, 90%) as an α/β mixture (α/β ratio, 1.8 : 1), $R_f$ = 0.30 (α) and 0.22 (β) (dichloromethane : methanol, 97 : 3).

**34 (α)** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 7.98 (m, 2H, ortho H, p-$Me_2$NBz), 7.70 - 7.10 (m, 15H, aromatic), 6.65 (m, 2H, meta H, p-$Me_2$NBz), 5.528 (dd, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 9.5 Hz), 5.307 (t, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 3 Hz, $J_{1OH}$ = 3 Hz), 4.760 (d, 1H, $C_6H_5CH_2$, $J_{gem}$ = 10.5 Hz), 4.627 (d, 1H, $C_6H_5CH_2$, $J_{gem}$ = 10.5 Hz), 4.000 (t, 1H, $H_4$, $J_{45}$ = 9 Hz, $J_{34}$= 9.5 Hz), 4.06-3.86 (m, 3H, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$, $H_4$), 3.738 (ddd, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{2OH}$ = 8 Hz, $J_{12}$ = 3.5 Hz, $J_{23}$ = 9 Hz), 3.505 (m, 1H, $H_5$), 3.425 (d, 1H, $OH_1$, $J_{1OH}$ = 3 Hz), 3.323 (d, 1H, $OH_2$, $J_{1OH}$ = 8 Hz), 3.033 (s, 6H, $N(CH_3)_2$), 1.10 (s, 9H, $SiC(CH_3)_3$); $^{13}$C n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 168.11 (CO), 92.75 ($C_1$), 62.73 ($C_6$), 40.04 ( $N(CH_3)_2$), 26.97 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$), 19.42 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$)

**34 (β)** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 7.98 (m, 2H, ortho H, p-$Me_2$NBz), 7.70 - 7.10 (m, 15H, aromatic), 6.65 (m, 2H, meta H, p-$Me_2$NBz), 5.340 (t, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 10 Hz), 5.277 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 9 Hz, $J_{1OH}$ = 9 Hz), 4.715 (d, 1H, $C_6H_5CH_2$, $J_{gem}$ = 10.5 Hz), 4.577 (d, 1H, $C_6H_5CH_2$, $J_{gem}$ = 10.5 Hz), 4.06-3.86 (m, 3H, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$, $H_4$), 3.057 (s, 6H, $N(CH_3)_2$), 1.00 (s, 9H, $SiC(CH_3)_3$); $^{13}$C n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 167.90 (CO), 97.04 ($C_1$), 62.93 ($C_6$)

Anal. calc. for **34** ($C_{38}H_{45}N0_7Si$): C, 69.59; H, 6.91; N, 2.13. Found : C, 69.33; H, 6.95; N, 2.04.

**1,2-Di-*O*-acetyl-4-*O*-benzyl-6-*O*-*t*-butyldiphenylsilyl-3-*O*-*p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl-D-glucopyranose (35)**

Compound **34** (0.50 g, 0.76 mmol) was dissolved in 6 mL of dichloromethane : pyridine (2 : 4). A trace of DMAP and 0.5 mL (5.3 mmol) of acetic anhydride were added at room temperature and the reaction stirred for 1 hour. It was then diluted with dichloromethane and extracted with water, 1M hydrochloric acid, saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate,and water, dried over sodium sulfate and the organic layer was concentrated *in vacuo*. The residue **35** (0.54 g, 96%) was sufficiently pure to continue to the next step.

**35 (α)** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 7.90 (m, 2H, ortho H, p-$Me_2$NBz), 7.80 - 7.00 (m, 15H, aromatic), 6.656 (m, 2H, meta H, p-$Me_2$NBz), 6.370 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 3.7 Hz), 5.817 (t, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 9.5 Hz), 5.192 (dd, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 10 Hz), 4.626 (d, 1H, $C_6H_5CH_2$, $J_{gem}$ = 10.5 Hz), 4.562 (d, 1H, $C_6H_5CH_2$, $J_{gem}$ = 10.5 Hz), 4.10-3.50 (m, 4H, $H_6$,$H_{6'}$, $H_4$, $H_5$), 3.040 (s, 6H, $N(CH_3)_2$), 2.102 (s, 3H, OAc), 1.907 (s, 3H, OAc), 1.10 (s, 9H, $SiC(CH_3)_3$).

**35 (β)** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 7.90 (m, 2H, ortho H, p-$Me_2$NBz), 7.80 - 7.00 (m, 15H, aromatic), 6.656 (m, 2H, meta H, p-$Me_2$NBz), 5.734 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 8 Hz), 5.545 (t, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 9 Hz), 5.212 (dd, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 9 Hz), 4.626 (d, 1H, $C_6H_5CH_2$, $J_{gem}$ = 10.5 Hz), 4.562 (d, 1H, $C_6H_5CH_2$, $J_{gem}$ = 10.5 Hz), 4.10-3.50 (m, 4H, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$, $H_4$, $H_5$), 3.040 (s, 6H, $N(CH_3)_2$), 2.124 (s, 3H, OAc), 1.924 (s, 3H, OAc), 1.00 (s, 9H, $SiC(CH_3)_3$).

**2-*O*-Acetyl-4-*O*-benzyl-6-*O*-*t*-butyldiphenylsilyl-3-*O*-*p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl-D-glucopyranose (36)**

Compound **35** (0.54 g, 0.73 mmol) was dissolved in 9.5 mL of anhydrous DMF. Hydrazine acetate (8.050 mg, 0.87 mmol) was added and the reaction stirred at room temperature for 48 hours. It was then diluted with dichloromethane and extracted with water, saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate and water, dried over sodium sulfate and the organic layer was concentrated *in vacuo*. Column chromatography (toluene : ether 2 : 1) provided **36** (0.4301 g, 85 %), $R_f$ = 0.38 (α) and 0.50 (β), (toluene : ether 2 : 1).

**36 (α)** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 7.94 (m, 2H, ortho **H**, p-$Me_2$NBz), 7.80 - 7.00 (m, 15H, aromatic), 6.657 (m, 2H, meta **H**, p-$Me_2$NBz), 5.863 (dd, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 9 Hz), 5.433 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 3.5 Hz), 5.050 (dd, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 10 Hz), 4.633 (d, 1H, $C_6H_5CH_2$, $J_{gem}$ = 10.5 Hz), 4.563 (d, 1H, $C_6H_5CH_2$, $J_{gem}$ = 10.5 Hz), 4.10 - 3.80 (m, 4H, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$, $H_4$, $H_5$), 3.043 (s, 6H, $N(CH_3)_2$), 1.977 (s, 3H, OAc), 1.10 (s, 9H, $SiC(CH_3)_3$).

**36 (β)** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 7.94 (m, 2H, ortho **H**, p-$Me_2$NBz), 7.80 - 7.00 (m, 15H, aromatic), 6.657 (m, 2H, meta **H**, p-$Me_2$NBz), 5.547 (t, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 9.5 Hz), 4.927 (dd, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 10 Hz), 4.703 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 8 Hz), 4.610 (d, 1H, $C_6H_5CH_2$, $J_{gem}$ = 10 Hz), 4.540 (d, 1H, $C_6H_5CH_2$, $J_{gem}$ = 10 Hz), 3.527 (dt, 1H, $H_5$, $J_{45}$ = 9.5 Hz), 3.040 (s, 6H, $N(CH_3)_2$), 1.973 (s, 3H, OAc), 1.107 (s, 9H, $SiC(CH_3)_3$).

## 2-*O*-Acetyl-4-*O*-benzyl-6-*O*-t-butyldiphenylsilyl-3-*O*-*p*-*N*,*N*-dimethylaminobenzoyl-β-D-glucopyranosyl chloride (37)

a) Compound **36** (33.7 mg, 48.3 μmol) was dissolved in 1 mL of dichloromethane. DMF (4 μL) and 12 μL (1.4 mmol) of oxalyl chloride were added and the reaction stirred at room temperature for 10 minutes. The reaction was then concentrated *in vacuo* and then co-evaporated 2 times with toluene and the residue taken up in anhydrous dichloromethane. (Aqueous workup was found to result in almost total hydrolysis.) $^1$H n.m.r. of the residue showed only **37**.

b) Compound **36** (10 mg, 14.3 μmol) was dissolved in 0.5 mL of anhydrous deuterated chloroform. Then 27 μL (14.4 μmol) of a preformed 0.537 M solution of Vilsmeyer's reagent in deuterated chloroform was added. The n.m.r. obtained was identical to the above, revealing only **37**.

**37** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 8.10 (m, 2H, meta **H**, p-$Me_2$NBz) (shifts to δ = 6.7 ppm with addition of collidene), 7.92 (m, 2H, ortho **H**, p-$Me_2$NBz), 7.80 - 7.00 (m, 15H, aromatic), 5.478 (t, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 9.5 Hz), 5.376 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 8.5 Hz), 5.245 (t, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 9 Hz), 4.676 (d, 1H, $C_6H_5CH_2$, $J_{gem}$ = 11 Hz), 4.557 (d, 1H, $C_6H_5CH_2$, $J_{gem}$ = 11 Hz), 4.168 (t, 1H, $H_4$, $J_{45}$ = 9.5 Hz), 4.0 - 3.9 (m, 2H, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$), 3.618 (dt, 1H, $H_5$, $J_{56}$ = 2 Hz, $J_{56'}$ = 2 Hz) 3.30 (s, 6H, $N(CH_3)_2$) (shifts to δ = 3.05 ppm with addition of collidene), 1.99 (s, 3H, OAc), 1.12 (s, 9H, $SiC(CH_3)_3$).

**Glycosidation reactions of 2-*O*-acetyl-4-*O*-benzyl-6-*O*-*t*-butyldiphenylsilyl-3-*O*-*p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl-D-glucopyranosyl chloride (37)**

Compound **37** (21.5 μmol) was dissolved in dichloromethane and was added dropwise to a solution of 11.93 mg (22.6 μmol) of allyl 4,6-di-benzyl-2-deoxy-2-phthalimido-β-D-glucopyranoside in 1 mL of dichloromethane containing about 35 mg (3 to 4 equiv.) of silver triflate and 27 μL (10 equiv.) of tetramethylurea. After 1 to 2 hours of reaction at room temperature the reaction was worked up but provided only the hydrolysis products of the chloride and the starting alcohol.

**2-*O*-Acetyl-4-*O*-benzyl-6-*O*-*t*-butyldiphenylsilyl-3-*O*-*p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl-α-D-glucopyranosyl bromide (40)**

Compound **36** in deuterated chloroform (21.1 μmol) was treated with 50 μL DMF and 50 μL of a 1.0 M solution of oxalyl bromide (50 μmol) in deuterated chloroform. $^1$H n.m.r. showed a mixture of compounds containing only a minor amount of α-bromide and a substantial amount of what seems to be a β-bromide (**39**). After addition of a trace (≅ 1 mg) of tetraethylammonium bromide the mixture converted quantitatively to the desired α-bromide (**40**).

**40 (α)** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 8.14 (m, 2H, meta H, p-$Me_2$NBz) (shifts to δ = 6.7 ppm with addition of lutidene), 7.94 (m, 2H, ortho H, p-$Me_2$NBz),7.85 - 6.90 (m, 15H, aromatic), 6.642 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 4 Hz), 5.891 (t, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 9.0 Hz), 4.931 (dd, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 10 Hz), 4.651 (d, 1H, $C_6H_5CH_2$, $J_{gem}$ = 11 Hz), 4.518 (d, 1H, $C_6H_5CH_2$, $J_{gem}$ = 11 Hz), 4.148 (t, 1H, $H_4$, $J_{45}$ = 9.5 Hz),

4.15 - 3.5 (m, 3H, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$, $H_5$), 3.27 (s, 6H, $N(CH_3)_2$) (shifts to $\delta$ = 3.0 ppm with addition of lutidene), 2.02 (s, 3H, OAc), 1.12 (s, 9H, $SiC(CH_3)_3$).

**40 (β)** $^1H$ n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): $\delta$ 5.578 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 8.5 Hz), 5.431 (t, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 9.0 Hz), 5.348 (dd, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 9 Hz), 4.687 (d, 1H, $C_6H_5CH_2$, $J_{gem}$ = 11 Hz), 4.557 (d, 1H, $C_6H_5CH_2$, $J_{gem}$ = 11 Hz), 4.226 (t, 1H, $H_4$, $J_{45}$ = 9.5 Hz), 3.582 (dt, 1H, $H_5$, $J_{56}$ = 2.5 Hz, $J_{56'}$ = 2.5 Hz), 3.27 (s, 6H, $N(CH_3)_2$) (shifts to $\delta$ = 3.0 ppm with addition of lutidene), 2.00 (s, 3H, OAc).

## Glycosidation reactions of 2-*O*-acetyl-4-*O*-benzyl-6-*O*-*t*-butyldiphenylsilyl-3-*O*-*p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl-α-D-glucopyranosyl bromide (40)

A solution of 21.1 μmol of **40** and 0.13 mmol of 2-propanol in 0.5 mL of anhydrous nitromethane - toluene (1 : 1) was added 4 A molecular sieves and the mixture was cooled to -20 °C. Silver triflate (26.1 μmmol) in 0.25 mL of nitromethane - toluene (1 : 1) was added to this solution. After 30 minutes the reaction was quenched by the addition of lutidene. It was next diluted with ether and sequentially extracted with water, sodium hydrogen carbonate, water and then dried over sodium sulfate. The organic layer was condensed *in vacuo* to provide 4-*O*-benzyl-6-*O*-*t*-butyldiphenylsilyl-3-*O*-*p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl-1,2-*O*-(2-propyloxy-2-ethylidene)-D-glucopyranose (**41**) (11.73 mg, 75%), $R_f$ = 0.81 (ethyl acetate : hexane, 1 : 2).

**41** $^1H$ n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): $\delta$ 7.90 (m, 2H, ortho H, p-$Me_2NBz$), 7.8 - 7.1 (m, 15H, aromatic), 6.62 (m, 2H, meta H, p-$Me_2NBz$), 5.817 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 5 Hz), 5.595 (dd, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 1 Hz), 4.854 (d, 1H, $C_6H_5CH_2$, $J_{gem}$ = 11.5 Hz), 4.501 (d, 1H, $C_6H_5CH_2$, $J_{gem}$ = 11.5 Hz), 4.50 (dd, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 2.5 Hz),

3.929 (septet, 1H, $(CH_3)_2CH$, $J_{gem}$ = 6 Hz), 3.9 - 3.7 (m, 4H, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$, $H_5$, $H_4$), 3.06 (s, 6H, $N(CH_3)_2$), 1.71 (s, 3H, OAc), 1.17 (d, 6H, $(CH_3)_2CH$, $J_{gem}$ = 6 Hz), 0.98 (s, 9H, $SiC(CH_3)_3$).

**3-*O*-*p*-N,N-Dimethylaminobenzoyl-1,2:5,6-di-*O*-isopropylidene-D-glucofuranose (45)**

1,2 : 5,6-di-*O*-isopropylidene-D-glucofuranose (**44**) (2.11 g, 1.06 mmol) was dissolved in 22 mL of pyridine. To this solution 1.5 g (8.2 mmol) of *p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl chloride and trace DMAP were added and the solution warmed to 50 °C. The reaction was stirred at this temperature for 24 hours and then 0.50 g (2.7 mmol) more acid chloride was added. The reaction mixture was stirred for a further 24 hours and then condensed *in vacuo*. The residue was taken up in dichloromethane and sequentially extracted with water, 1M hydrochloric acid, saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate and finally water. The dichloromethane layer was dried over sodium sulfate and then evaporated *in vacuo*. Column chromatography of the residue (ethyl acetate : hexane 1 : 4) provided **45** (2.11 g, 64%), $R_f$ = 0.22 (ethyl acetate : hexane 1 : 4).

$^1$H n.m.r.: δ 7.88 (m, 2H, ortho H, p-$Me_2$NBz), 6.64 (m, 2H, meta H, p-$Me_2$NBz), 5.942 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 3.5 Hz), 5.462 (d, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 2.2 Hz), 4.623 (d, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 0 Hz), 4.370 (m, 2H, $H_4$, $H_5$), 4.098 (m, 2H, $H_6$, $H_6$), 3.05 (s, 6H, $N(CH_3)_2$), 1.54 - 1.26 (m, 12H, $O_2C(CH_3)_2$).

## 3-*O*-*p*-N,N-Dimethylaminobenzoyl-D-glucopyranose (46)

Compound **45** (2.11 g, 1.06 mmol) was dissolved in 2 mL of dichloromethane and 5 mL of 90 % aqueous trifluoroacetic acid was added at room temperature. After 30 minutes of stirring at room temperature water was added and the solution was then condensed *in vacuo*. The residue was taken up in water and extracted twice with dichloromethane. The water layer was condensed *in vacuo* and then co-evaporated with toluene to provide **46** as an α/β mixture (α/β ratio 1 : 1.2), $R_f$ = 0.04 (methanol : dichloromethane 1 : 19). Compound **46** was not further purified before proceeding to the next step.

**46 (α)** $^1$H n.m.r. ($D_2O$): δ 8.147 (m, 2H, ortho H, p-$Me_2$NBz), 7.330 (m, 2H, meta H, p-$Me_2$NBz), 5.417 (t, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{23}$ = 1.0 Hz, $J_{34}$ = 9.5 Hz), 5.327 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 3.5 Hz), 3.993 (ddd, 1H, $H_5$, $J_{45}$ = 10 Hz, $J_{56}$ = 3 Hz, $J_{56'}$ = 5 Hz), 3.887 (dt, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 10 Hz), 3.94 - 3.72 (m, 4H, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$, $H_4$, $H_2$), 3.197 (s, 6H, $N(CH_3)_2$).

**46 (β)** $^1$H n.m.r. ($D_2O$): δ 8.147 (m, 2H, ortho H, p-$Me_2$NBz), 7.330 (m, 2H, meta H, p-$Me_2$NBz), 5.217 (t, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{23}$ = 9.5 Hz, $J_{34}$ = 9.5 Hz), 4.827 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 8 Hz), 3.94 - 3.72 (m, 3H, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$, $H_4$), 3.630 (ddd, 1H, $H_5$, $J_{45}$ = 10 Hz, $J_{56}$ = 2 Hz, $J_{56'}$ = 6.5 Hz), 3.587 (dd, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 9.5 Hz), 3.197 (s, 6H, $N(CH_3)_2$).

## 1,2,4,6-Tetra-*O*-acetyl-3-*O*-*p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl-D-glucopyranose (47)

Compound **46** (2.18 mmol) was dissolved in 5 mL of pyridine and 3 mL of acetic anhydride and trace DMAP were added at room temperature. After 3

hours of stirring at room temperature t.l.c. of the reaction showed only one spot and the solution was then condensed *in vacuo* and co-evaporated with toluene 2 times. The residue was taken up in dichloromethane and extracted with water, 1M hydrochloric acid, saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate, dried over sodium sulfate and reduced to a residue *in vacuo*. Column chromatography of the residue (ethyl acetate : hexane 1 : 2) provided **47** (0.84 g, 84% over 2 steps) as an α/β mixture (α/β ratio 1.7 : 1), $R_f$ = 0.47 (ethyl acetate : hexane 1 : 1).

**47 (α)** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 7.9 - 7.8 (m, 2H, ortho **H**, p-$Me_2$NBz), 6.7 - 6.6 (m, 2H, meta **H**, p-$Me_2$NBz), 6.373 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 3.5 Hz), 5.723 (t, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{23}$ = 10 Hz, $J_{34}$ = 10 Hz), 5.313 (t, 1H, $H_4$, $J_{34}$ = 10 Hz, $J_{45}$ = 10 Hz), 5.257 (dd, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 10 Hz, $J_{12}$ = 3.5 Hz), 4.36 - 4.25 (m, 1H, $H_6$), 4.190 (ddd, 1H, $H_5$, $J_{45}$ = 10 Hz, $J_{56}$ = 4 Hz, $J_{56'}$ = 6.5 Hz), 4.16 - 4.08 (m, 1H, $H_{6'}$), 2.207, 2.117, 1.933, 1.927 (OAc).

**47 (β)** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 7.9 - 7.8 (m, 2H, ortho **H**, p-$Me_2$NBz), 6.7 - 6.6 (m, 2H, meta **H**, p-$Me_2$NBz), 5.793 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 8 Hz), 5.477 (t, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{23}$ = 9.5 Hz, $J_{34}$ = 9.5 Hz), 5.35 - 5.20 (m, 2H, $H_2$, $H_4$), 4.36 - 4.25 (m, 1H, $H_6$), 4.16 - 4.08 (m, 1H, $H_{6'}$), 3.917 (ddd, 1H, $H_5$, $J_{45}$ = 10 Hz, $J_{56}$ = 4 Hz, $J_{56'}$ = 2 Hz), 2.130, 2.040, 1.940, 1.927 (OAc).

## 2,4,6-Tri-*O*-acetyl-3-*O*-*p*-*N*,*N*-dimethylaminobenzoyl-D-glucopyranosyl bromide (48)

Compound **47** (52.84 mg, 0.11 mmol) was dissolved in 5 mL of dichloromethane and cooled to 0 °C. To this solution 3 mL of 45% HBr in glacial acetic acid was added and the reaction stirred at 0 °C for 2.5 hours. The

solution was then diluted with dichloromethane, extracted with ice cold saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate, dried over sodium sulfate and condensed *in vacuo* to leave the bromide **48** and a small contaminant of compound **47**. The mixture was used without further purification in the next step.

**48** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 8.15 (m, 2H, ortho **H**, p-$Me_2$NBz), 8.04 (m, 2H, meta **H**, p-$Me_2$NBz), 6.645 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 4 Hz), 5.817 (t, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 9.5 Hz), 5.350 (t, 1H, $H_4$, $J_{45}$ = 9.5 Hz), 5.054 (dd, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 10 Hz), 3.30 (s, 6H, $(CH_3)_2$NH), 2.132, 2.041, 1.974 (OAc).

**4,6-Di-*O*-acetyl-3-*O*-*p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl-1,2-*O*-(2-propyloxy-2-ethylidene)-D-glucopyranose (49)**

Compound **48** (0.11 mmol, from the previous step) was dissolved in 2.5 mL of nitromethane : toluene (1 : 1) and cooled to -20 °C. To this solution 0.32 mmol of 2-propanol and 103 mg (0.4 mmol) of silver triflate, which had been previously dissolved in 1.2 mL of nitromethane : toluene (1 : 1) containing 1 to 2 μL of trifluoromethane sulfonic acid were added sequentially. After the addition of silver triflate a precipitate formed. The reaction was stirred for 1 hour and then lutidene was added and the mixture filtered. The filtrate was diluted with ether, extracted with water, saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate and water, dried over sodium sulfate and condensed *in vacuo* to provide **49** (34.7 mg, 65%).

**49** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 7.90 (m, 2H, ortho **H**, p-$Me_2$NBz), 6.635 (m, 2H, meta **H**, p-$Me_2$NBz), 5.763 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 5 Hz), 5.407 (t, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 2 Hz), 5.067 (dd, 1H, $H_4$, $J_{45}$ = 9 Hz), 4.460 (dd, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 3 Hz), 4.237 (d,

2H, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$, $J_{56}$ = 4 Hz, $J_{56'}$ = 4 Hz), 4.000 (dt, 1H, $H_5$), 3.947 (septet, 1H, $OCH(CH_3)_2$, 86 = 6 Hz), 3.06 (s, 6H, $(CH_3)_2NH$), 2.096, 2.091, (OAc), 1.765 (s, 3H, $COCH_3$), 1.163 (d, 6H, $OCH(CH_3)_2$, $J_{gem}$= 6 Hz).

**2,4,6-Tri-*O*-acetyl-3-*O*-*p*-*N*,*N*-dimethylaminobenzoyl-D-glucopyranose (50)**

Compound **47** (0.84 g, 1.7 mmol) was dissolved in 10 mL of DMF and 0.16238 g (1.763 mmol) of hydrazine acetate was added at room temperature. After 4 hours at room temperature t.l.c. of the reaction showed no remaining starting material and the solution was diluted with dichloromethane, extracted with water, dried over sodium sulfate and condensed *in vacuo*. Column chromatography of the residue (ethyl acetate : hexane 1 : 1) provided **50** (0.71 g, 92%) as an α/β mixture (α/β ratio, 2 : 1), $R_f$ = 0.22 (ethyl acetate : hexane 1 : 1).

**50 (α)** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 8.0 - 7.8 (m, 2H, ortho **H**, p-$Me_2$NBz), 6.7 - 6.6 (m, 2H, meta **H**, p-$Me_2$NBz), 5.777 (t, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{23}$ = 10 Hz, $J_{34}$ = 10 Hz), 5.497 (t, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 3 Hz, $J_{1OH}$ = 3 Hz), 5.257 (t, 1H, $H_4$, $J_{34}$ = 10 Hz, $J_{45}$ = 10 Hz), 5.077 (dd, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 10 Hz, $J_{12}$ = 3.5 Hz), 4.347 (ddd, 1H, $H_5$, $J_{56}$ = 4 Hz, $J_{56'}$ = 2.3 Hz), 4.32-4.21 (m, 1H, $H_6$), 4.21-4.10 (m, 2H, $H_{6'}$, OH), 2.113, 1.983, 1.957 (OAc); $^{13}$C n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 170.96 (**C**O), 170.37 (**C**O), 169.63 (**C**O), 166.07 (**C**O), 153.63 (ring $C_1$, p-$Me_2$NBz), 131.70 (ring $C_2$, p-$Me_2$NBz), 115.53 (ring $C_4$, p-$Me_2$NBz), 62.14 ($C_6$)

**50 (β)** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 5.473 (t, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{23}$ = 10 Hz, $J_{34}$ = 9.5 Hz), 5.243 (t, 1H, $H_4$, $J_{45}$ = 9.5 Hz, $J_{34}$ = 10 Hz), 5.043 (t, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{12}$ = 8 Hz, $J_{23}$ = 10 Hz), 4.843 (t, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 8 Hz, $J_{1OH}$ = 10 Hz), 4.32 - 4.21 (m, 1H, $H_6$),

4.21 - 4.10 (m, 2H, $H_{6'}$, OH), 3.803 (ddd, 1H, $H_5$, $J_{56}$ = 5 Hz, $J_{56'}$ = 2.5 Hz), 2.107, 1.990, 1.957 (OAc).

Anal. Calc. for **50** ($C_{21}H_{27}NO_{10}$): Calc: C, 55.62; H, 6.00; N, 3.09. Found : C, 55.37; H, 5.83; N, 3.26.

## 2,4,6-Tri-*O*-acetyl-3-*O*-*p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl-D-glucopyranosyl trichloroacetimidate (51)

Compound **50** (0.2803 g, 0.698 mmol) was dissolved in 0.5 mL of 1,2-dichloroethane and cooled to 0 °C. 93 µL (0.60 mmol) of DBU and 160 µL (1.6 mmol) of trichloroacetonitrile were added. After 30 minutes of reaction time the mixture was condensed *in vacuo*. Column chromatography of the residue (ethyl acetate : hexane 1 : 2) provided **51** (0.25598 g, 69.3%) as an α/β mixture (α/β ratio, 4 : 1), $R_f$ = 0.29 (α) and 0.18 (β) (ethyl acetate : hexane 1 : 2).

**51 (α)** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 8.70 (s, 1H, CNH), 7.91 - 7.79 (m, 2H, ortho H, p-$Me_2$NBz), 6.66 - 6.57 (m, 3H, meta **H**, p-$Me_2$NBz, $H_1$), 5.831 (t, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 10 Hz), 5.359 (t, 1H, $H_4$, $J_{45}$ = 10 Hz), 5.295 (dd, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 10 Hz, $J_{12}$ = 3.5 Hz), 3.05 (s, 6H, $N(CH_3)_2$)

**51 (β)** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 8.50 (s, 1H, CNH), 5.595 (t, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 10 Hz, $J_{23}$ = 10 Hz), 3.03 (s, 6H, $N(CH_3)_2$)

**2,4,6-Tri-*O*-acetyl-3-*O*-*p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl-α-D-glucopyranosyl fluoride (54) and 2,4,6-tri-*O*-acetyl-3-*O*-*p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl-β-D-glucopyranosyl fluoride (55) and 4,6-di-*O*-acetyl-3-*O*-*p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl-1,2-*O*-(methoxy-2-ethylidene)-D-glucopyranose (56)**

Compound **48** (0.12493 g, 0.276 mmol) was dissolved in 0.7 mL of anhydrous THF and cooled to 0 °C. To this solution 50 µL of DAST was added. The solution was let come to room temperature and after 30 minutes methanol was added and the solution was condensed *in vacuo*. The residue was taken up in dichloromethane and organic layer was washed with water, saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate, a final washing with water and then dried over sodium sulfate. Column chromatography of the residue (ethyl acetate : hexane 1 : 2) provided a mixture of **54**, **55**, and **56** (70.24 mg, 56%), $R_f$ = 0.39 (ethyl acetate : hexane 1 : 2)for **54**, **55**, and **56**.

**54** and **55** $^1$H n.m.r.: see Table I and table II

**56** $^1$H n.m.r.: δ 5.845 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 5.5 Hz), 5.470 (t, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 3 Hz), 5.120 (m secondary, 1H, $H_6$, $J_{66'}$ = 9 Hz, $J_{56}$ = 1 Hz), 4.479 (ddd, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 3 Hz), 4.265 (d secondary, 2H, $H_4$, $H_5$), 4.040 (m, 1H, $H_{6'}$), 3.32 (s, 3H, $OCH_3$), 3.08 (s, 6H, $(CH_3)_2N$), 2.094 (OAc), 1.75 (s, $CH_3C(OR)_3$).

**2,4,6-tri-*O*-acetyl-3-*O*-*p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl-D-glucopyranosyl-fluoride (54,α) (55,β)4,6-Di-*O*-acetyl-3-*O*-*p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl-D-glucopyranosyl-1,2-orthoacetylfluoride (57,R) (58,S) and 3,4,6-Tri-*O*-acetyl-D-glucopyranosyl-1,2-orthoacetylfluoride (60, S) (61, R) and 2,3,4,6-Tetra-*O*-acetyl-D-glucopyranosyl fluoride (62, β) (63, α)**

In a typical experiment DAST (2 - 4 equiv.) was added to a solution of the sugar (10 - 20 mg) in dry tetrahydrofuran (0.3 - 0.5 ml) and the mixture was shaken. The reaction was completed within minutes. DAST was removed by co-evaporation with toluene at approximately 25 - 30 0C several times and the residue was then dissolved in the desired solvent.

See Tables 1 and 2 for n.m.r. data.

**Isopropyl 2,4,6-tri-*O*-acetyl-3-*O*-*p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl-glucopyranoside (52) and 2,4,6-Tri-*O*-acetyl-3-*O*-*p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl-glucopyranosyl fluoride (54)**

Compound **51** (0.24987 g, 0.42 mmol) was dissolved in 4 mL of 1,2-dichloroethane. The solution dried over 4 A molecular sieves and divided into 2 equal portions (0.21 mmol each).

a) Isopropanol (160 µL, 2.09 mmol) was added to 0.21 mmol of **51** and the mixture was cooled to -20 °C. To this solution 26 µL (0.21 mmol) of boron trifluoroetherate was added and the reaction stirred for 24 hours. It was then diluted with dichloromethane and extracted with water, dried over sodium

sulfate and chromatographed on a preparative t.l.c. plate (ethyl acetate : hexane 1 : 1) to provide the β-glycoside **52**.

**52** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 7.85 (m, 2H, ortho **H**, p-$Me_2$NBz), 6.60 (m, 3H, meta **H**, p-$Me_2$NBz, $H_1$), 5.426 (t, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 10 Hz), 5.212 (t, 1H, $H_4$, $J_{45}$ = 9.8 Hz), 5.090 (dd, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 10 Hz), 4.637 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 8 Hz), 4.279 (dd, 1H, $H_6$, $J_{56}$ = 5 Hz), 4.160 (dd, 1H, $H_{6'}$, $J_{66'}$ = 12.2 Hz), 3.951 (septet, 1H, $OCH(CH_3)_2$, $J_{gem}$ = 6 Hz), 3.768 (ddd, 1H, $H_5$, $J_{56'}$ = 2.5 Hz), 3.02 (s, 6H, $N(CH_3)_2$), 1.24 (d, 3H, $OCH(CH_3)_2$), 1.14 (d, 3H, $OCH(CH_3)_2$).

b) The alcohol **53** (94.52 mg, 0.20 mmol) was added to 0.21 mmol of **51** and the mixture was cooled to -20 °C. To this solution 26 μL (0.21 mmol) of boron trifluoride etherate was added and the solution allowed to react for 24 hours. At this time it was worked up as above. Preparative plate isolation of the products revealed the presence of the imidate **51**, the anomeric alcohol **46**, and the anomeric fluoride **54**.

**54** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 7.85 (m, 2H, ortho **H**, p-$Me_2$NBz), 6.60 (m, 3H, meta **H**, p-$Me_2$NBz, $H_1$), 5.787 (dd, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 2.8 Hz, $J_{1,28}$ = 53 Hz), 5.740 (t, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 10 Hz), 5.320 (t, 1H, $H_4$, $J_{45}$ = 10 Hz), 5.120 (ddd, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 10 Hz, $J_{2,28}$ = 24 Hz), 4.39 - 4.11 (m, 3H, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$, $H_5$), 3.05 (s, 6H, $N(CH_3)_2$), 2.1, 2.0, 1.9 (s, 3H, OAc).

## 2-*O*-Acetyl-4-*O*-benzyl-6-*O*-*t*-butyldiphenylsilyl-3-*O*-*p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl-D-glucopyranosyl trichloroacetimidate (66)

Compound **36** (0.40336 g, 0.578 mmol) was dissolved in 5 mL of dichloromethane and cooled to 0 °C. To this solution 86 µL (0.575 mmol) of DBU and 1.45 mL (1.50 mmol) of 2,2,2-trichloroacetonitrile were added. After 30 minutes of reaction the mixture was diluted with dichloromethane, extracted with water, dried over sodium sulfate and condensed *in vacuo*. Column chromatography of the residue (ethyl acetate : dichloromethane : hexane 1 : 2 : 9) provided **66** (0.48 g, 98%) as an α/β mixture, $R_f$ = 0.31 (ethyl acetate : dichloromethane : hexane 1 : 2 : 9).

**66** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 8.58 (s, 1H, CNH), 7.96 (m, 2H, ortho H, p-$Me_2$NBz), 7.75 - 6.95 (m, 15H, aromatic), 6.68 (m, 2H, meta H, p-$Me_2$NBz), 6.62 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 3.5 Hz), 5.937 (t-secondary, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 10 Hz), 5.240 (dd, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 10 Hz), 4.627 (d, 1H, $OCH_2C_6H_5$, $J_{gem}$ = 11 Hz), 4.560 (d, 1H, $OCH_2C_6H_5$, $J_{gem}$ = 11 Hz), 4.13 - 3.90 (m, 4H, $H_4$, $H_5$, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$), 3.05 (s, 6H, $N(CH_3)_2$), 1.923 (s, 3H, OAc), 1.077 (s, 9H, $SiC(CH_3)_3$).

## Octyl 2-*O*-acetyl-4-*O*-benzyl-6-*O*-*t*-butyldiphenylsilyl-3-*O*-*p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl-β-D-glucopyranoside (67)

Compound **66** (0.48 g, 0.57 mmol) was dissolved in 6 mL of dichloromethane and 0.47 mL (2.98 mmol) of n-octanol and 4 A sieves were added and the subsequent solution cooled to -22 °C. To this solution 0.70 mL of boron trifluoride etherate were added. After 30 minutes of reaction the mixture was diluted with dichloromethane, filtered, extracted with water, dried

over sodium sulfate and condensed *in vacuo*. Column chromatography of the residue (ethyl acetate : dichloromethane : hexane 0.5 : 2.5 : 9) provided **67** (0.1683 g, 36%), $R_f$ = 0.23 (ethyl acetate : dichloromethane : hexane 0.5 : 2.5 : 9).

**67** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 7.93 (m, 2H, ortho **H**, p-$Me_2NBz$), 7.8 - 7.7 (m, 15H, aromatic), 6.34 (m, 2H, meta **H**, p-$Me_2NBz$), 5.517 (t, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 9.5 Hz), 5.100 (dd, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 10 Hz), 4.623 (d, 1H, $OCH_2C_6H_5$, $J_{gem}$ = 10.5 Hz), 4.553 (d, 1H, $OCH_2C_6H_5$, $J_{gem}$ = 10.5 Hz), 4.512 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 8 Hz), 4.00 - 3.90 (m, 4H, $H_4$, $H_5$, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$), 3.887 (m, 1H, $OCH_2(CH_2)_6CH_3$), 3.590 (m, 1H, $OCH_2(CH_2)_6CH_3$), 3.05 (s, 6H, $N(CH_3)_2$), 1.943 (s, 3H, OAc), 1.596 (m, 2H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$), 1.267 (m, 10H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$), 1.083 (s, 9H, $SiC(CH_3)_3$), 1.596 (t-secondary, 3H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$).

**Octyl 4-*O*-benzyl-6-*O*-*t*-butyldiphenylsilyl-3-*O*-*p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl-β-D-glucopyranoside (68) and Octyl 4-*O*-benzyl-6-*O*-*t*-butyldiphenylsilyl-β-D-glucopyranoside (69) and Octyl 2-*O*-acetyl-4-*O*-benzyl-6-*O*-*t*-butyldiphenylsilyl-β-D-glucopyranoside (70)**

a) Compound **67** (71 mg, 87.7 μmol) was dissolved in 0.4 mL of dichloromethane : methanol (1 : 1) and cooled to 0 °C. To this solution 0.20 mL of saturated sodium methoxide in methanol was added. After 2.5 hours of reaction examination by t.l.c. showed the presence of **67** (50%),and **68**, **69** and **70** in about a 5:5:1 ratio.

b) Compound **67** (21.95 mg, 27.1 μmmol) was dissolved in 1 mL of dichloromethane and 0.135 mL of pyridine and 1.5 μL (30.9 μmol) of hydrazine monohydrate were added at room temperature. After 2 hours of reaction examination by t.l.c. showed the presence of substantial amounts of **67** (70%) as well as the presence of both **68**,**70** and **69** in a ratio of 7:1:4.

c) Compound **67** (32.82 mg, 40.5 μmmol) was treated with 0.4 mL of 50 % saturated ammonia in methanol. After 4 days the t.l.c. showed **67** and each of **68**, **69**, and **70** in a ratio of 1:3:3.

d) Compound **67** (10 to 20 mg) was dissolved in 1 mL of dichloromethane : methanol (1 : 1) and 40 μL of moist triethylamine was added at room temperature. After 24 hours of reaction 20% conversion provided some **70** and **68** in a 1:2 ratio. After 3 days of reaction under these conditions mainly **69** was present but some starting material (**67**) still remained.

e) Compound **67** (11 mg, 13.5 μmol) was dissolved in 1 mL of anhydrous DMF and was treated with 1.28 mg (13.9 μmol) of hydrazine acetate at room temperature. After 18 hours no product had formed and the reaction mixture was warmed to 40 °C. After 24 hours at 40 °C decomposition was observed. Therefore the reaction was returned to room temperature but after 10 days little conversion had taken place.

f) Compound **67** (10 mg) was dissolved in 200 μL of potassium t-butoxide in t-butanol at room temperature. Initial formation of the product was rapid but the reaction quickly slowed and became non-selective. After 24 to 48

hours all four compounds (**67**, **68**, **69** and **70**) were present in comparable amounts.

g) Compound **67** (12.26 mg, 15.1 μmol) was dissolved in 0.3 mL of 3% hydrochloric acid in methanol that had been pre-cooled to 0 °C. After 5 hours the sugar had decomposed.

**68** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 7.987 (m, 2H, ortho **H**, p-$Me_2$NBz), 7.8 - 7.0 (m, 15H, aromatic), 6.660 (m, 2H, meta **H**, p-$Me_2$NBz), 5.360 (t, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 9.5 Hz), 4.707 (d, 1H, $OCH_2C_6H_5$, $J_{gem}$ = 10.5 Hz), 4.587 (d, 1H, $OCH_2C_6H_5$, $J_{gem}$ [illegible]5 Hz), 4.410 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 7.8 Hz), 4.00 - 3.85 (m, 4H, $H_4$, $H_5$, $H_6$, $OCH_2(CH_2)_6CH_3$), 3.627 (ddd, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 9.5 Hz), 3.570 (m, 1H, $OCH_2(CH_2)_6CH_3$), 3.480 (dt, 1H, $H_5$, $J_{45}$ = 9 Hz, $J_{56}$ = 3 Hz, $J_{56'}$ = 3 Hz), 3.05 (s, 6H, $N(CH_3)_2$), 2.857 (d, 1H, OH, $J_{2OH}$ = 3 Hz), 1.687 (m broad, 2H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$), 1.28 (m, 10H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$), 1.087 (s, 9H, $SiC(CH_3)_3$), 0.877 (t-secondary, 3H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$).

**4-*O*-Benzyl-6-*O*-*t*-butyldiphenylsilyl-1,2-dichloroacetyl-3-*O*-*p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl-D-glucopyranoside (71)**

a) Compound **34** (0.45 g, 0.69 mmol) was dissolved in 1.5 mL of dichloromethane and cooled to -15 °C. To this solution 250 μL (4.4 equivalents) of pyridine and 220 μL (4.0 equivalents) of chloroacetyl chloride were added. The solution was stirred for 10 minutes at -15 °C and then diluted with dichloromethane and extracted with water, saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate and water, dried over sodium sulfate and the organic layer was concentrated *in vacuo* to leave a residue. Rapid column chromatography of

the residue (ethyl acetate : hexane 1 : 1) provided **71** (0.478 g, 87%) isolated as a white foam. **71** was isolated as an α/β mixture (α/β ratio, 9/4), $R_f$ = 0.75 (ethyl acetate : hexane 1 : 1). Chromatography also supplied the anomeric hydroxyl compound **72** (58.6 mg, 11%)

b) Compound **34** (0.35267 g, 0.538 mmol) was dissolved in 5.5 mL of dichloromethane and cooled to -22 °C. To this solution 200 µL (2.4 mmol) of pyridine and 170 µL (2.72 mmol) of chloroacetyl chloride were added sequentially. After 45 minutes the reaction mixture was diluted with dichloromethane and extracted with water, 1M hydrochloric acid, sodium hydrogen carbonate and water. The organic layer was then dried over sodium sulfate and condensed *in vacuo* to leave a residue **71**. **71** was sufficiently pure to proceed to the next step.

**71 (α)** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 8.00 - 7.90 (m, 2H, ortho **H**, p-$Me_2$NBz), 7.80 - 7.00 (m, 15H, aromatic), 6.55 (m, 2H, meta **H**, p-$Me_2$NBz), 6.467 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 3.5 Hz), 5.827 (dd, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 9 Hz), 5.275 (dd, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 10.5 Hz), 4.650 (d, 1H, $C_6H_5CH_2$, $J_{gem}$ = 11 Hz), 4.577 (d, 1H, $C_6H_5CH_2$, $J_{gem}$ = 11 Hz), 4.2-4.05 (m, 4H, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$, $H_4$, $H_5$), 4.05 - 3.85 (m, 5H, $CH_2Cl$), 1.10 (s, 9H, $SiC(CH_3)_3$); $^{13}$C n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 166.71 (**C**O), 165.89 (**C**O), 165.81 (**C**O), 91.30 (**C**$_1$), 75.01 ($C_6H_5CH_2$), 61.93 (**C**$_6$), 40.64 (**C**$H_2$Cl), 40.33 (**C**$H_2$Cl), 40.02 (N(**C**$H_3$)$_2$), 26.95 (SiC(**C**$H_3$)$_3$), 19.38 (Si**C**(CH$_3$)$_3$)

**71 (β)** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 8.00 - 7.90 (m, 2H, ortho **H**, p-$Me_2$NBz), 7.80 - 7.00 (m, 15H, aromatic), 6.55 (m, 2H, meta **H**, p-$Me_2$NBz), 5.830 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 8.2 Hz), 5.587 (dd, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 9.5 Hz), 5.260 (dd, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 9.5 Hz), 4.650 (d, 1H, $C_6H_5CH_2$, $J_{gem}$ = 11 Hz), 4.577 (d, 1H, $C_6H_5CH_2$, $J_{gem}$ = 11 Hz), 4.2 - 4.05 (m, 3H, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$, $H_4$), 4.05 - 3.85 (m, 5H, $CH_2Cl$), 3.643 (dt, 1H, $H_5$, $J_{45}$ = 9.5 Hz, $J_{56}$ = 2 Hz, $J_{56'}$ = 2 Hz), 1.09 (s, 9H, $SiC(CH_3)_3$);

$^{13}C$ n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 166.29 (**C**O), 165.60 (**C**O), 92.96 ($C_1$), 75.21 ($C_6H_5CH_2$), 62.05 ($C_6$), 40.48 ($CH_2Cl$), 40.42 ($CH_2Cl$), 40.02 ($N(CH_3)_2$), 26.95 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$), 19.38 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$)

Anal. calc. for **71** ($C_{42}H_{47}Cl_2N0_9Si$): C, 62.37; H, 5.86; N, 1.73; Cl, 8.77. Found : C, 62.42; H, 5.77; N, 1.60; Cl, 9.07.

## 4-*O*-Benzyl-6-*O*-*t*-butyldiphenylsilyl-2-*O*-chloroacetyl-3-*O*-*p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl-D-glucopyranose (72)

Compound **71** (0.347 g, 0.429 mmol) was dissolved in 6 mL of DMF and cooled to 0 °C. To this solution 42 mg (0.46 mmol) of hydrazine acetate was added. The solution was stirred for 1 hour at 0 °C and then diluted with dichloromethane and extracted with water, dried over sodium sulfate and the organic layer was concentrated *in vacuo* to leave a residue. Rapid column chromatography of the residue (dichloromethane : ethyl acetate : hexane 1 : 2 : 6) provided **72** (0.2538 g, 82%) as a white foam. **72** was isolated as an α/β mixture (α/β ratio, 10/6), $R_f$ = 0.35 (dichloromethane : ethyl acetate : hexane 1 : 2 : 6).

**72 (α)** $^1H$ n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 7.92 (m, 2H, ortho **H**, p-$Me_2NBz$), 7.80 - 7.00 (m, 15H, aromatic), 6.65 (m, 2H, meta **H**, p-$Me_2NBz$), 5.880 (dd, 1H, $H_{3\alpha}$, $J_{34}$ = 9 Hz), 5.460 (t, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 3.5 Hz), 5.063 (dd, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 10 Hz), 4.630 (d, 1H, $C_6H_5CH_2$, $J_{gem}$ = 10.5 Hz), 4.563 (d, 1H, $C_6H_5CH_2$, $J_{gem}$ = 10.5 Hz), 4.16 - 3.80 (m, 6H, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$, $H_4$, $H_5$, $CH_2Cl$), 3.117 (d, 1H, OH, $J_{1OH}$ = 3.5 Hz), 3.037 (s, 6H, $N(CH_3)_2$), 1.103 (s, 9H, $SiC(CH_3)_3$); $^{13}C$ n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 167.73 (**C**O), 165.96 (**C**O), 90.19 ($C_1$), 74.86 ($C_6H_5CH_2$), 62.05 ($C_6$), 40.72 ($CH_2Cl$), 40.04 ($N(CH_3)_2$), 26.98 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$), 19.41 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$).

**72 (β)** $^1$H n.m.r: δ 7.92 (m, 2H, ortho H, p-$Me_2$NBz), 7.80 - 7.00 (m, 15H, aromatic), 6.65 (m, 2H, meta H, p-$Me_2$NBz), 5.543 (t, 1H, $H_{3\beta}$, $J_{34}$ = 9.5 Hz), 4.973 (dd, 1H, $H_{2\beta}$, $J_{23}$ = 10 Hz), 4.722 (t, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 8 Hz), 4.610 (d, 1H, $C_6H_5CH_2$, $J_{gem}$ = 11 Hz), 4.537 (d, 1H, $C_6H_5CH_2$, $J_{gem}$ = 11 Hz), 4.16 - 3.80 (m, 6H, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$, $H_4$, $H_5$, $CH_2Cl$), 3.527 (dt, 1H, $H_5$, $J_{45}$ = 10 Hz, $J_{56}$ = 3 Hz, $J_{56'}$ = 3 Hz), 3.104 (d, 1H, OH, $J_{1OH}$ = 8 Hz), 3.037 (s, 6H, $N(CH_3)_2$), 1.103 (s, 9H, $SiC(CH_3)_3$)

Anal. calc. for **72** ($C_{40}H_{46}ClNO_8Si$): C, 65.60; H, 6.33; N, 1.91; Cl, 4.84. Found : C, 65.53; H, 6.43; N, 2.12; Cl, 4.91.

**4-*O*-Benzyl-6-*O*-*t*-butyldiphenylsilyl-2-*O*-chloroacetyl-3-*O*-*p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl-D-glucopyranosyl trichloroacetimidate (73, α), (74, β)**

a) Compound **72** (0.3356 g, 0.459 mmol) was dissolved in 4.5 mL of dichloromethane and cooled to -22 °C. To this solution 75 µL (0.50 mmol) of DBU and 0.90 mL (9.0 mmol) of trichloroacetonitrile were added. The solution was stirred for 10 minutes and then concentrated *in vacuo* to leave a residue. Rapid column chromatography of the residue (ethyl acetate : hexane 1 : 2) provided **73** and **74** (0.2538 g, 82%). **73** and **74** were isolated as a white foam (ratio α/β, 2.6/1), $R_f$ = 0.55 (β anomer) and 0.64 (α anomer) (ethyl acetate : hexane 1 : 2).

b) Compound **72** (0.10503 g, 0.144 mmol) was dissolved in 7 mL of dichloromethane and cooled to -78 °C. To this solution 18 µL (1.20 mmol) of DBU, 0.25 mL (2.5 mmol) of trichloroacetonitrile and 1.77 mg (59 µmol) of

sodium hydride (80% in oil) were added. The solution was stirred for 10 minutes and then warmed to -40 °C. After 1 hour at this temperature the reaction mixture was diluted with dichloromethane and the organic layer extracted with water, dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated *in vacuo* to leave a residue. Rapid column chromatography of the residue (ethyl acetate : dichloromethane : hexane 1 : 6 : 2) provided the α anomer (**73**) (81.44 mg, 65%) and the β anomer (**74**) (23.53 mg, 19%), $R_f$ = 0.28 (β anomer) and 0.54 (α anomer) (ethyl acetate : dichloromethane : hexane 1 : 6 : 2).

**73 (α)** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 8.60 (s, CNH), 7.933 (m, 2H, ortho H, p-$Me_2NBz$), 7.78 - 6.98 (m, 15H, aromatic), 6.663 (m, 2H, meta H, p-$Me_2NBz$), 6.640 (t, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 3.5 Hz), 5.950 (dd, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 9 Hz), 5.293 (dd, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 10 Hz), 4.637 (d, 1H, $C_6H_5CH_2$, $J_{gem}$ = 10.5 Hz), 4.563 (d, 1H, $C_6H_5CH_2$, $J_{gem}$ = 10.5 Hz), 4.2 - 3.5 (m, 6H, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$, $H_4$, $H_5$, $CH_2Cl$), 3.053 (s, 6H, $N(CH_3)_2$), 1.103 (s, 9H, $SiC(CH_3)_3$); $^{13}$C n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 166.92 (CO), 165.76 (CO), 161.16 (CNH), 93.40 ($C_1$), 75.21 ($C_6H_5CH_2$), 62.18 ($C_6$), 40.45 ($CH_2Cl$), 40.07 ($N(CH_3)_2$), 26.93 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$), 19.38 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$)

**74 (β)** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 8.70 (s, CNH), 7.933 (m, 2H, ortho H, p-$Me_2NBz$), 7.78 - 6.98 (m, 15H, aromatic), 6.663 (m, 2H, meta H, p-$Me_2NBz$), 5.973 (t, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 8 Hz), 5.637 (dd, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 9 Hz), 5.437 (dd, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 9.5 Hz), 4.680 (d, 1H, $C_6H_5CH_2$, $J_{gem}$ = 11 Hz), 4.632 (d, 1H, $C_6H_5CH_2$, $J_{gem}$ = 11 Hz), 4.2 - 3.5 (m, 6H, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$, $H_4$, $H_5$, $CH_2Cl$), 3.053 (s, 6H, $N(CH_3)_2$), 1.087 (s, 9H, $SiC(CH_3)_3$); $^{13}$C n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 95.43 ($C_1$), 75.11 ($C_6H_5CH_2$), 26.88 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$)

Anal. calc. for **73** ($C_{42}H_{46}Cl_4N_2O_8Si$): C, 57.54; H, 5.29; N, 3.20; Found : C, 57.58; H, 5.29; N, 2.94.

**Octyl 4-*O*-benzyl-6-*O*-*t*-butyldiphenylsilyl-2-*O*-chloroacetyl-3-*O*-*p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl-β-D-glucopyranoside (75) and 4-*O*-Benzyl-6-*O*-*t*-butyldiphenylsilyl-3-*O*-*p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl-1,2-*O*-(n-octyloxy-2-dichloroethylidene)-D-glucopyranose (76)**

a) Compounds **73** and **74** (as the α/β mixture) (0.12685 g, 0.145 mmol) were dissolved in 1.5 mL of dichloromethane and cooled to -78 °C. To this solution 4 A molecular sieves, 45 μL (0.28 mmol) of n-octanol and 20 μL (0.16 mmol) of boron trifluoride etherate were added. The solution was stirred for 5 hours and then quenched by the addition of triethylamine. It was then diluted with dichloromethane and extracted with water and saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate, dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated *in vacuo* to leave a residue. Column chromatography of the residue (ethyl acetate : dichloromethane : hexane 0.5 : 2.5 : 9) provided **75** (33.04 mg, 27%) and the orthoester **76** (26.44 mg, 22 %) (exo/endo ratio 5/2), $R_f$ = 0.33 (**75**) and 0.48 (**76**) (ethyl acetate : dichloromethane : hexane 0.5 : 2.5 : 9).

b) Compound **73** (α anomer) (70.53 mg, 80.28 μmol) was dissolved in 1.4 mL of dichloromethane : hexane (1 : 9) containing 10 % acetonitrile and 40 μL (0.25 mmol) of n-octanol was added and the solution cooled to -22 °C. To this solution 10 μL (83 μmol) of boron trifluoride etherate was added. The solution was stirred for 10 minutes and then diluted with dichloromethane and the organic layer extracted with water, saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate, dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated *in vacuo*. Crude n.m.r. of the residue showed greater than 90 % of the β-glycoside. Column chromatography

of the residue (ethyl acetate : dichloromethane : hexane 1 : 2 : 9) provided **75** (41.98 mg, 65%).

**75** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 7.923 (m, 2H, ortho **H**, p-$Me_2NBz$), 7.80 - 7.00 (m, 15H, aromatic), 6.647 (m, 2H, meta **H**, p-$Me_2NBz$), 5.543 (t, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 9.5 Hz), 5.123 (dd, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 9.5 Hz), 4.630 (d, 1H, $C_6H_5CH_2$, $J_{gem}$ = 10 Hz), 4.563 (d, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 8 Hz), 4.557 (d, 1H, $C_6H_5CH_2$, $J_{gem}$ = 10 Hz), 4.05 - 3.80 (m, 6H, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$, $H_4$, $CH_2Cl$, $OCH_2(CH_2)_6CH_3$), 3.56 - 3.43 (m, 2H, $H_5$, $OCH_2(CH_2)_6CH_3$), 3.05 (s, 6H, $N(CH_3)_2$), 1.613 (m, 2H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$), 1.293 (m, 10H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$), 1.093 (s, 9H, $SiC(CH_3)_3$), 0.880 (t secondary, 3H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$); $^{13}$C n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 166.25 (**C**O), 166.05 (**C**O), 100.31 ($C_1$), 74.95 ($C_6H_5CH_2$), 69.55 ($OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$), 62.58 ($C_6$), 40.63 ($CH_2Cl$), 40.03 ($N(CH_3)_2$), 26.68 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$), 19.35 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$), 14.11 ($OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$).

**76 (exo)** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 7.903 (m, 2H, ortho **H**, p-$Me_2NBz$), 7.76 - 7.10 (m, 15H, aromatic), 6.617 (m, 2H, meta **H**, p-$Me_2NBz$), 5.936 (d, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 5.2 Hz), 5.633 (t, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 2 Hz), 4.830 (d, $C_6H_5CH_2$, $J_{gem}$ = 11.5 Hz), 4.530 (dd, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 3 Hz), 4.500 (d, $C_6H_5CH_2$, $J_{gem}$ = 11.5 Hz), 3.97 - 3.64 (m, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$, $H_4$, $CH_2Cl$), 3.527 (t, $OCH_2(CH_2)_6CH_3$), 3.043 (s, 6H, $N(CH_3)_2$), 1.567 (m, 2H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$), 1.257 (m, 10H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$), 1.027 (s, 9H, $SiC(CH_3)_3$), 0.865 (t secondary, 3H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$); $^{13}$C n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 165.13 (**C**O), 97.96 ($C_1$), 43.36 ($CH_2Cl$), 26.85 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$), 19.35 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$), 14.11 ($OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$).

**76 (endo)**$^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 5.933 (d, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 5.5 Hz), 5.690 (t, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 4 Hz), 4.790 (d, $C_6H_5CH_2$, $J_{gem}$ = 12 Hz), 4.563 (dd, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 4 Hz), 4.513 (d, $C_6H_5CH_2$, $J_{gem}$ = 12 Hz), 3.97 - 3.64 (m, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$, $H_4$, $CH_2Cl$, $OCH_2(CH_2)_6CH_3$), 3.043 (s, 6H, $N(CH_3)_2$), 1.567 (m, 2H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$), 1.257 (m, 10H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$), 1.000 (s, 9H,

$SiC(CH_3)_3$), 0.865 (t secondary, 3H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$); $^{13}C$ n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 165.45 (CO), 98.20 ($C_1$), 45.15 ($CH_2Cl$), 26.88 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$)

**Octyl 4-*O*-benzyl-6-*O*-*t*-butyldiphenylsilyl-3-*O*-*p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl-β-D-glucopyranoside (68)**

a) Compound **75** (41.98 mg, 49.7 μmol) was dissolved in 1.5 mL of DMF and treated with 7.90 mg (85.8 μmol) of hydrazine acetate at room temperature. The solution was stirred for 4 hours and then 10 mg (0.1 mmol) more hydrazine acetate was added and the solution stirred for a further 20 hours at room temperature. It was then diluted with dichloromethane and extracted with water and saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate, dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated *in vacuo* to leave a residue. Column chromatography of the residue (ethyl acetate : dichloromethane : hexane 1 : 2 : 9) provided **68** (36.72 mg, 96%), $R_f$ = 0.10 (ethyl acetate : dichloromethane : hexane 1 : 2 : 9).

b) Compound **75** (38.15 mg, 45.2 μmol) was dissolved in 2 mL of dichloromethane : methanol (1 : 1) and 8.40 mg (91.2 μmol) of hydrazine acetate were added and the solution was stirred at room temperature for 24 hours. At this point 10 mg (0.1 mmol) more hydrazine acetate was added and the solution allowed to react for a further 3 hours. It was then diluted with dichloromethane and extracted with water, 1M hydrochloric acid, saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate, water, dried over sodium sulfate and condensed *in vacuo*. Column chromatography of the residue (ethyl acetate : dichloromethane : hexane 1 : 2 : 9) provided **68** (24.08 mg, 69%).

**68** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 7.987 (m, 2H, ortho **H**, p-$Me_2NBz$), 7.8 - 7.0 (m, 15H, aromatic), 6.660 (m, 2H, meta **H**, p-$Me_2NBz$), 5.360 (t, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 9.5 Hz), 4.707 (d, 1H, $OCH_2C_6H_5$, $J_{gem}$ = 10.5 Hz), 4.587 (d, 1H, $OCH_2C_6H_5$, $J_{gem}$ = 10.5 Hz), 4.410 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 7.8 Hz), 4.00 - 3.85 (m, 4H, $H_4$, $H_5$, $H_6$, $OCH_2(CH_2)_6CH_3$), 3.627 (ddd, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 9.5 Hz), 3.570 (m, 1H, $OCH_2(CH_2)_6CH_3$), 3.480 (dt, 1H, $H_5$, $J_{45}$ = 9 Hz, $J_{56}$ = 3 Hz, $J_{56'}$ = 3 Hz), 3.05 (s, 6H, $N(CH_3)_2$), 2.857 (d, 1H, OH, $J_{2OH}$ = 3 Hz), 1.687 (m broad, 2H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$), 1.28 (m, 10H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$), 1.087 (s, 9H, $SiC(CH_3)_3$), 0.877 (t-secondary, 3H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$).

## Octyl 4-*O*-benzyl-6-*O*-*t*-butyldiphenylsilyl-3-*O*-*p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl-2-*O*-trifluoromethanesulfonyl-β-D-glucopyranoside (77)

Compound **68** (24.08 mg, 31.4 μmol) was dissolved in 600 μL of dichloromethane - pyridine (19 : 1) and cooled to 0 °C. To this solution 10 μL (60 μmol) of trifluoromethane sulfonic anhydride was added and the solution stirred. After 10 minutes the reaction was completed. The solution was diluted with dichloromethane and extracted with water, 1M hydrochloric acid, saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate, dried over sodium sulfate and condensed *in vacuo* to leave a residue. Column chromatography of the residue (ethyl acetate : hexane 1 : 2) provided **77** (21.56 mg, 76.4%), $R_f$ = 0.78 (ethyl acetate : hexane 1 : 2).

**Octyl 4-*O*-benzyl-6-*O*-*t*-butyldiphenylsilyl-2-*O*-*p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl-β-D-mannopyranoside (78) and Octyl 4-*O*-benzyl-6-*O*-*t*-butyldiphenylsilyl-3-*O*-*p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl-β-D-mannopyranoside (79) and 2,5-Anhydro-4-*O*-benzyl-2,3-dideoxy-6-*O*-*t*-butyldiphenylsilyl-D-erythro-hex-2-enose (80)**

a) Compound **68** (19.83 mg, 25.8 µmol) was dissolved in 200 µL of dichloromethane : pyridine (19 : 1) and cooled to 0 °C. To this solution 5 µL (29.7 µmol) of trifluoromethane sulfonic anhydride was added and the solution stirred. After 15 minutes the reaction was diluted with dichloromethane and extracted with water, dried over sodium sulfate and condensed *in vacuo*. The residue was taken up in 1 mL of DMF and 40 µL of water and 10 µL of pyridine were added. The mixture was warmed to 60 °C and after 5 hours the mixture was diluted with dichloromethane, extracted with water, 1M hydrochloric acid, sodium hydrogen carbonate, water and then dried over sodium sulfate and condensed *in vacuo*. Column chromatography of the residue (ethyl acetate : dichloromethane : hexane 1 : 2 : 9) provided **78** (6.72 mg, 43%) and **79** (3.08 mg, 20%) as well as **80** (4.32 mg, 27%), $R_f$ = 0.08 (**78**) and 0.31 (**79**) (ethyl acetate : dichloromethane : hexane 1 : 2 : 9).

b) Compound **68** (40 mg, 52.1 µmol) was dissolved in 1.5 mL of dichloromethane : pyridine (19 : 1) and cooled to 0 °C. To this solution 9 µL (53 µmol) of trifluoromethane sulfonic anhydride was added and the solution stirred. After 15 minutes the reaction was diluted with dichloromethane and extracted with water, dried over sodium sulfate and condensed *in vacuo*. The residue was taken up in 1 mL of nitromethane and 10 µL of water and 40 µL of

pyridine were added and the solution was refluxed. After 35 minutes the mixture was diluted with dichloromethane, extracted with water, 1M hydrochloric acid, sodium hydrogen carbonate, water and then dried over sodium sulfate and condensed *in vacuo*. $^1$H n.m.r. of the crude mixture revealed **78**, **79**, and **80** in a 50 : 35 : 15 ratio.

b') Compound **77** (21.56 mg, 24 μmol) was dissolved in 400 μL of nitromethane and 50 μL of pyridine and 20 μL of water were added and the solution warmed to 56 °C. After 2 hours the reaction was worked up and chromatographed as in (a) to provide **78** (6.29 mg, 34%) and **79** (3.95 mg, 21%) as well as **80** (0.6 mg, 3%).

b") Compound **77** (29.53 mg, 32.8 μmol) was dissolved in 400 μL of nitromethane and 50 μL of pyridine and 20 μL of water were added and the solution warmed to 40 °C. After 24 hours the reaction was worked up and chromatographed as in (a) to provide **78** (8.99 mg, 35%) and **79** (4.94 mg, 10%).

**78** $[\alpha]_D^{22}$ = -92 (c 0.2, dichloromethane)

**78** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 8.067 (m, 2H, ortho **H**, p-$Me_2$NBz), 7.80 - 7.20 (m, 15H, aromatic), 6.567 (m, 2H, meta **H**, p-$Me_2$NBz), 5.527 (dd, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 3 Hz), 4.910 (d, 1H, $C_6H_5CH_2$, $J_{gem}$ = 11 Hz), 4.727 (d, 1H, $C_6H_5CH_2$, $J_{gem}$ = 11 Hz), 4.670 (d, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 1 Hz), 4.13 - 3.95 (m, 4H, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$, $H_4$, $H_3$), 3.847 (m, 1H, $OCH_2(CH_2)_6CH_3$), 3.473 (m, 1H, $OCH_2(CH_2)_6CH_3$), 3.023 (s, 6H, $N(CH_3)_2$), 2.693 (s broad, 1H, OH), 1.547 (m broad, 2H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$), 1.230 (m broad, 10H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$), 0.847 (t

secondary, 3H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$); $^{13}C$ n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 167.51 (**C**O), 98.90 (**C**$_1$), 74.86 ($C_6H_5CH_2$), 69.24 ($OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$), 63.15 (**C**$_6$), 40.07 ($N(CH_3)_2$), 26.93 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$), 19.43 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$), 14.11 ($OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$).

79 $[\alpha]_D^{22}$ = -82 (c 0.1, dichloromethane)

**79** $^1H$ n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 8.010 (m, 2H, ortho **H**, p-$Me_2NBz$), 7.80 - 7.05 (m, 15H, aromatic), 6.653 (m, 2H, meta **H**, p-$Me_2NBz$), 5.190 (dd, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 9.5 Hz), 4.783 (d, 1H, $C_6H_5CH_2$, $J_{gem}$ = 10.8 Hz), 4.630 (d, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 0 Hz), 4.613 (d, 1H, $C_6H_5CH_2$, $J_{gem}$ = 10.8 Hz), 4.257 (m, 2H, $H_4$, $H_2$), 3.970 (m, 2H, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$, $J_{56}$ = 3 Hz, $J_{56'}$ = 3 Hz), 3.923 (m, 1H, $OCH_2(CH_2)_6CH_3$), 3.547 (m, 1H, $OCH_2(CH_2)_6CH_3$), 3.453 (dt, $H_5$, $J_{45}$ = 9 Hz), 2.300 (d, 1H, OH, $J_{H,OH}$ = 3.5 Hz), 1.643 (m broad, 2H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$), 1.310 (m broad, 10H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$), 1.077 (s, 9H, $SiC(CH_3)_3$), 0.880 (t secondary, 3H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$); $^{13}C$ n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 166.33 (**C**O), 99.28 (**C**$_1$), 75.86 ($C_6H_5CH_2$), 69.57 ($OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$), 63.08 (**C**$_6$), 40.07 ($N(CH_3)_2$), 26.86 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$), 19.41 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$), 14.14 ($OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$).

**80** $^1H$ n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 9.5 (s, 1H, $H_1$), 7.50 - 7.10 (m, 15H, aromatic), 6.061 (d, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 3 Hz), 5.004 (t, 1H, $H_4$, $J_{45}$ = 3.5 Hz), 4.679 (dt, 1H, $H_5$, $J_{56}$ = 4 Hz), 4.609 (d, 1H, $C_6H_5CH_2$, $J_{gem}$ = 11.5 Hz), 4.565 (d, 1H, $C_6H_5CH_2$, $J_{gem}$ = 11.5 Hz), 3.804 (dd, 1H, $H_6$, $J_{66'}$ = 11 Hz), 3.701 (dd, $H_{6'}$, $J_{56'}$ = 6 Hz), 1.02 (s, 9H, $SiC(CH_3)_3$)

Anal. Calc. for **78** ($C_{46}H_{61}NO_7Si$): C, 71.93; H, 8.00; N, 1.82; Found; C, 71.92; H, 8.00; N, 1.78.

Anal. Calc. for **79** ($C_{46}H_{61}NO_7Si$): C, 71.93; H, 8.00; N, 1.82; Found; C, 71.65; H, 7.66; N, 1.87.

**Methyl 4,6-*O*-benzylidene-2-*O*-*p*-methoxybenzoyl-β-D-glucopyranoside (81) and Methyl 4,6-*O*-benzylidene-3-*O*-*p*-methoxybenzoyl-β-D-glucopyranoside (82)**

Compound **22** (0.88 g, 3.12 mmol) was dissolved in toluene and 0.78 g of dibutyltin oxide was added. The reaction mixture was refluxed for 2.5 hours with azeotropic removal of water. Toluene was removed *in vacuo* and the residue taken up in 50 mL of anhydrous dioxane. To this solution 4 A molecular sieves and 0.92 mL (3.13 mmol) of a 58% anisoyl chloride solution in toluene were added. The reaction was stirred at room temperature for 14 hours and then condensed *in vacuo*. The residue was taken up in dichloromethane and extracted with saturated sodium bicarbonate. The organic layer was dried and evaporated and column chromatography of the residue (ethyl acetate : hexane 1 : 2) provided **82** (0.42 g, 32.3%); $R_f$ = 0.23 (ethyl acetate : hexane 1 : 2).

$[\alpha]_D^{22}$ = -138° (c 0.4, dichloromethane).

**82** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 8.033 (m, 2H, ortho **H**, pMeOBz), 7.46 - 7.26 (m, 5H, aromatic), , 6.90 (m, 2H, meta **H**, pMeOBz), 5.54 (s, 1H, $C_6H_5CHO_2$), 5.430(t, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 9.5 Hz), 4.457 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 7.8 Hz), 4.405 (dd, 1H, $H_6$, $J_{66'}$ = 10.5 Hz, $J_{65}$ = 5 Hz), 3.863 (dd 1H, $H_{6'}$, $J_{66'}$ = 10.5 Hz, $J_{56'}$ = 9 Hz), 3.843 (s, 3H, $OCH_3$, anomeric), 3.804 (dd, 1H, $H_4$, $J_{34}$ = 9.5 Hz, $J_{45}$ = 10 Hz), 3.70 (dd, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{12}$ = 7.9 Hz, $J_{23}$ = 9 Hz), 3.603 (s, 3H, $OCH_3$), 3.587 (m, 1H, $H_5$), 3.00 (s broad, 1H, OH); $^{13}$C-n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 166.50 (CO), 163.62 ($CH_3OC_6H_5CHO$, $C_1$), 121.87 ($CH_3OC_6H_5CHO$, $C_4$), 104.63 ($C_6H_5CHO_2$), 101.36 ($C_1$), 68.64 ($C_6$), 55.41 ($OCH_3$, anisoyl).

Anal. calc. for **82** ($C_{22}H_{24}O_8$): C, 63.45; H, 5.81. Found : C, 63.08; H, 5.82.

**Methyl 4,6-*O*-benzylidene-2-*O*-*p*-methoxybenzoyl-β-D-mannopyranoside (84) and Methyl 4,6-*O*-benzylidene-3-*O*-*p*-methoxybenzoyl-β-D-mannopyranoside (83)**

Compound **82** (0.1817 g, 0.436 mmol) was dissolved in 5.5 mL of pyridine - dichloromethane (1 : 19) and cooled to 0 °C. To this solution 150 µL (0.89 mmol) of trifluoromethanesulfonic anhydride was added. The reaction mixture was stirred for 10 minutes at this temperature. At this time t.l.c. indicated that the triflate had formed quantatively (ethyl acetate : hexane, 1:2, $R_f$ = 0.7). The reaction mixture was next diluted with dichloromethane and then extracted with ice cold water. The organic layer was dried over sodium sulfate and then condensed *in vacuo*. The residue was taken up in 500 µL of pyridine and 5 mL of nitromethane. 60 µL of water was added and the reaction mixture refluxed. After 2 hours of reaction time the solution was allowed to cool to room temperature and then diluted with dichloromethane and extracted sequentially with water, 1M hydrochloric acid, and saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate. The organic layer was dried over sodium sulfate and condensed *in vacuo* to provide **84** and **83** in a 2 : 1 ratio. Column chromatography of the residue (ethyl acetate : dichloromethane : hexane 4 : 1 : 6) provided **84**; $R_f$ = 0.16 (ethyl acetate : dichloromethane : hexane 4 : 1 : 6) and **83** $R_f$ = 0.09 (ethyl acetate : dichloromethane : hexane, 4 : 1 : 6).

**83** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 8.07 (m, 2H, ortho **H**, pMeOBz), 7.50 - 7.25 (m, 5H, aromatic), 6.92 (m, 2H, meta **H**, pMeOBz), 5.60 (s, 1H, $C_6H_5CHO_2$), 5.263

(dd, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 10 Hz, $J_{23}$ = 3.3 Hz), 4.623 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 1 Hz), 4.443-4.34 (dddd, 2H, $H_6$,$H_2$, $J_{66'}$ = 10 Hz, $J_{65}$ = 5 Hz), 4.293 (t, 1H, $H_4$, $J_{34}$ = 10 Hz, $J_{45}$ = 10 Hz), 3.967 (t, 1H, $H_{6'}$, $J_{66'}$ = 10 Hz, $J_{56'}$ = 10 Hz), 3.843 (s, 3H, $OCH_3$ anomeric), 3.804 (dd, 1H, $H_4$, $J_{34}$ = 9.5 Hz, $J_{45}$ = 10 Hz), 3.600 (s, 3H, $OCH_3$), 3.533 (dt, 1H, $H_5$, $J_{45}$ = 10 Hz, $J_{56'}$ = 10 Hz, $J_{56}$ = 5 Hz), 2.42 (s, 1H, OH); $^{13}$C-n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 165.75 (CO), 101.75 ($C_6H_5CHO_2$), 101.11 ($C_1$), 69.71 ($C_2$), 68.65 ($C_6$).

**84** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 8.083 (m, 2H, ortho H, pMeOBz), 7.53 - 7.33 (m, 5H, aromatic), , 6.943 (m, 2H, meta H, pMeOBz), 5.723 (dd, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 3.7 Hz), 5.636 (s, 1H, $C_6H_5CHO_2$), 4.647 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 1 Hz), 4.420 (dd, 1H, $H_6$, $J_{66'}$ = 10.5 Hz, ), 4.105 (dt, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 9.5 Hz, $J_{23}$ = 3.7 Hz $J_{3OH}$ = 4 Hz), 3.967 (t, 1H, $H_4$, $J_{45}$ = 9.5 Hz), 3.957 (t, 1H, $H_{6'}$, $J_{56'}$ = 10.5 Hz), 3.873 (s, 3H, $OCH_3$, anomeric), 3.533 (s, 3H, $OCH_3$), 3.503 (dt, 1H, $H_5$, $J_{65}$ = 5 Hz), 2.463 (d, 1H, OH, $J_{3OH}$ = 4 Hz); $^{13}$C-n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 166.14 (CO), 122.08 ($CH_3OC_6H_5CHO$, ring $C_4$), 102.08 ($C_6H_5CHO_2$), 100.93 ($C_1$), 68.63 ($C_6$).

Anal. calc. for **83** ($C_{22}H_{24}O_8$): C, 63.45; H, 5.81. Found : C, 61.96; H, 5.91.

Anal. calc. for **84** ($C_{22}H_{24}O_8$): C, 63.45; H, 5.81. Found : C, 62.01; H, 5.68.

## 1,2-*O*-Benzylidene-6-*O*-*t*-butyldiphenylsilyl-3-*O*-*p*-methoxybenzoyl-D-glucopyranose (85)

Compound **30** (10.47 g, 20.68 mmol) was dissolved in 200 mL of toluene and 5.3 mL (10.4 mmol) of bis-(tributyltin) oxide was added. The solution was refluxed for 4.5 hours with azeotropic removal of water. The reaction mixture was then cooled to room temperature and 6 mL of a 58 % solution of *p*-

methoxybenzoyl chloride in toluene (19.2 mmol) was added. After 16 hours of reaction time at room temperature 0.5 mL (1.6 mmol) more acid chloride solution were added and the reaction left for a further 32 hours. At that time there were only minor amounts of starting material visible by t.l.c. and the reaction mixture was poured into 500 mL of 1% potassium fluoride solution and stirred vigorously. Ethyl acetate was added to the solution and it was filtered into a separatory funnel. The aqueous layer was removed and the ethylacetate/toluene layer was extracted with water, saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate and then dried over sodium sulfate. The organic layer was concentrated *in vacuo* to leave a residue (13.52 g) of crude **85**. Column chromatography of the residue (7.35 g) (methanol : dichloromethane 1 : 99) provided **85** as an exo (S) and endo (R) mixture (1 : 1.7, exo : endo) (4.93 g., 67%). $R_f$ = 0.23 (dichloromethane : methanol 99 : 1).

**85 (endo)** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 8.04 (m, 2H, ortho H, p-MeOBz), 7.8 - 7.3 (m, 15H, aromatic), 6.94 (m, 2H, meta H, p-MeOBz), 5.943 (s, $C_6H_5CHO_2$), 5.882 (d, $H_1$, endo, $J_{12}$ = 5 Hz), 5.487 (t, $H_3$, $J_{23}$ = 2.5 Hz, $J_{34}$ = 2.5 Hz), 4.473 (dd, $H_2$, $J_{12}$ = 5 Hz, $J_{23}$ = 3.2 Hz), 4.2-3.8 (complex, $H_4$, $H_5$, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$), 3.925 (s, 3H, $OCH_3$), 2.790 (m, OH), 1.070 (s, 9H, $SiC(CH_3)_3$); $^{13}$C n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 165.62 (CO), 102.93 ($C_6H_5CHO_2$), 96.89 ($C_1$), 64.35 ($C_6$), 55.45 ($OCH_3$), 26.78 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$), 19.27 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$)

**85 (exo)** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 8.04 (m, 2H, ortho H, p-MeOBz), 7.8 - 7.3 (m, 15H, aromatic), 6.94 (m, 2H, meta H, p-MeOBz), 6.48 (s, $C_6H_5CHO_2$), 5.887 (d, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 4.9 Hz), 5.533 (t, $H_3$, $J_{23}$ = 4.1 Hz, $J_{34}$ = 4.1 Hz), 4.430 (t, $H_2$, $J_{12}$ = 4.9 Hz, $J_{23}$ = 4.7 Hz), 4.2-3.8 (complex, $H_4$, $H_5$, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$), 3.867 (s, 3H, $OCH_3$), 3.025 (m, OH, $J_{OH4}$ = 5 Hz), 1.100 (s, 9H, $SiC(CH_3)_3$); $^{13}$C n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 166.04 (CO), 103.69 ($C_6H_5CHO_2$), 97.56 ($C_1$), 64.18 ($C_6$), 55.45 ($OCH_3$), 26.84 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$), 19.27 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$)

Anal. calc. for **85** ($C_{37}H_{40}O_8Si$): C, 69.35; H, 6.29. Found : C, 69.23; H, 6.33

**4-*O*-Benzyl-1,2-*O*-benzylidene-6-*O*-*t*-butyldiphenylsilyl-3-*O*-*p*-methoxybenzoyl-D-glucopyranose (86)**

Compound **85** (2.79 g, 4.36 mmol) was dissolved in 15 mL of dichloromethane and 40 mL of cyclohexane and cooled to 0 °C. Then 2.0 mL (10.8 mmol) of benzyloxy-2,2,2-trichloroacetimidate and 250 µL of trifluoromethanesulfonic acid were added. After the solution was stirred at 0 °C for 5 hours (approximately 60 % complete) it was quenched by the addition of triethylamine. The reaction mixture was diluted with dichloromethane and was extracted with water, saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate and then dried over sodium sulfate. The organic solution was concentrated *in vacuo*. Column chromatography of the residue (dichloromethane : ethylacetate : hexane 4.4 : 0.4 : 9) provided **86** as an exo (S) and endo (R) mixture (1.63 g., 51%). $R_f$ = 0.18 (endo), 0.30 (exo) (dichloromethane : ethylacetate : hexane 4.4 : 0.4 : 9). The exo and endo anomers were separated.

**86 (endo)** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 8.022 (m, 2H, ortho **H**, p-MeOBz), 7.7 - 7.55 (m, 6H, benzylidine aromatic), 7.45 - 7.1 (m, 10H, diphenylsilyl aromatic), 6.91 (m, 2H, meta **H**, pMeOBz), 5.903 (s, 1H, $C_6H_5CHO_2$), 5.883 (d,1H, $H_1$, endo, $J_{12}$ = 5 Hz), 5.737 (dd, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{23}$ = 3 Hz, $J_{34}$ = 1.5 Hz), 4.867 (d, 1H, $CH_2C_6H_5$, $J_{gem}$ = 11.8 Hz), 4.508 (d, 1H, $CH_2C_6H_5$, $J_{gem}$ = 11.8 Hz), 4.407 (ddd, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{12}$ = 5 Hz, $J_{23}$ = 3 Hz, $J_{24}$ = 1.2 Hz), 4.070 (ddd, 1H, $H_5$, $J_{56}$ = 2 Hz, $J_{45}$ = 9 Hz, $J_{56'}$ = 4 Hz), 3.922 (ddd, 1H, $H_4$, $J_{45}$ = 9 Hz, $J_{34}$ = 1.5 Hz, $J_{24}$ = 1.2 Hz), 3.847 (s, 3H, $OCH_3$), 3.843 (dd, 1H, $H_6$, $J_{56}$ = 2 Hz, $J_{66'}$

= 11.5 Hz), 3.773 (dd, 1H, $H_{6'}$, $J_{56'}$ = 4 Hz, $J_{66'}$ = 11.5 Hz), 1.070 (s, 9H, $SiC(CH_3)_3$); $^{13}C$ n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 164.89 (CO), 103.27 ($C_6H_5CHO_2$), 97.03 ($C_1$), 63.51 ($C_6$), 55.51 ($OCH_3$), 26.77 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$), 19.32 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$)

Anal. calc. : No satisfactory elemental analysis could be obtained.

**4-*O*-Benzyl-6-*O*-*t*-butyldiphenylsilyl-3-*O*-*p*-methoxybenzoyl-D-glucopyranose (87)**

Compound **86** (1.28 g, 1.75 mmol) was dissolved in 90 mL of acetonitrile and cooled to 0 °C. To this solution 50 mL of aqueous trifluoroacetic acid were added. The solution was stirred at 0 °C for 10 minutes. The reaction mixture was diluted with dichloromethane and extracted with water, saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate and then dried over sodium sulfate. The organic layer was concentrated *in vacuo*. This residue was co-evaporated two times with water/methanol and then co-evaporated several times with toluene to azeotropicaly remove any residual water to provide **87** (1.12 g, 99%) (α:β ratio : 2.6 : 1) as a white solid, sufficiently pure to proceed to the next step. $R_f$ = 0.52 (dichloromethane : methanol 19 : 1).

**87 (α)** $^1H$ n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 8.025 (m, 2H, ortho **H**, p-MeOBz), 7.8 - 7.0 (m, 15H, aromatic), 6.900 (m,2H, meta **H**, p-MeOBz),5.587 (t, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{23}$ = 9.5 Hz, $J_{34}$ = 9.5 Hz), 5.300 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 3.5 Hz), 4.68 (dd, 1H, $CH_2C_6H_5$, $J_{gem}$ = 10.5 Hz), 4.62 (dd, 1H, $CH_2C_6H_5$, $J_{gem}$ = 10.5 Hz), 4.05 - 3.75 (m, 8H, $OCH_3$, $H_2$, $H_4$, $H_5$, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$), 3.713 (broad, 1H, OH), 3.05 (broad, 1H, $OH_\alpha$), 1.10 (s, 9H, $SiC(CH_3)_3$); $^{13}C$ n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 167.11 (**C**O), 92.75 ($C_1$), 74.83 ($C_6H_5CHO_2$), 62.75 ($C_6$), 55.49 ($OCH_3$), 27.00 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$), 19.44 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$)

**87 (β)** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 8.025 (m, 2H, ortho **H**, p-MeOBz), 7.8 - 7.0 (m, 15H, aromatic), 6.900 (m, 2H, meta **H**, p-MeOBz), 5.353 (t, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{23}$ = 1 Hz, $J_{34}$ = 9.5 Hz), 4.627 (d, 1H, $CH_2C_6H_5$, $J_{gem}$ = 11 Hz), 4.57 (d, 1H, $CH_2C_6H_5$, $J_{gem}$ = 11 Hz), 4.05 - 3.75 (m, 8H, $OCH_3$, $H_4$, $H_5$, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$), 3.713 (broad, 1H, OH), 3.547 (dd, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{12}$ = 8 Hz, $J_{23}$ = 9.5 Hz), 3.47 (dt, 1H, $H_5$, $J_{45}$ = 10 Hz, $J_{56}$ = 3 Hz, $J_{56'}$ = 3 Hz), 1.95 (broad, 1H, OH), 1.10 (s, 9H, $SiC(CH_3)_3$); $^{13}$C n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 96.96 ($C_1$), 26.85 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$), 19.28 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$)

Anal. calc. for **87** ($C_{37}H_{42}O_8Si$): C, 69.13; H, 6.58. Found : C, 69.44; H, 6.63

**4-*O*-Benzyl-1,2-di-*O*-chloroacetyl-6-*O*-*t*-butyldiphenylsilyl-3-*O*-*p*-methoxybenzoyl-D-glucopyranose (88)**

Compound **87** (0.31342 g, 0.49 mmol) was dissolved in 1 mL of dichloromethane and cooled to -22° C in a carbon tetrachloride / dry ice bath. Pyridine (0.18 mL, 2.16 mmol) and 0.15 mL (1.88 mmol) of chloroacetyl chloride were added sequentially. The solution was stirred at -22 °C for 10 minutes. The reaction mixture was diluted with dichloromethane and extracted with water, 1M hydrochloric acid, and saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate and then dried over sodium sulfate. The organic layer was concentrated *in vacuo*. Rapid column chromatography (ethyl acetate : hexane 1 : 1) provided **88** (0.36 g, 93%) as an α/β mixture (ratio α:β 2 : 1). $R_f$ = 0.5 (β), 0.59 (α) (ethyl acetate : hexane 1 : 1).

**88 (α)** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 7.99 (m, 2H, ortho **H**, p-MeOBz), 7.75 - 7.0 (m, 15H, aromatic), 6.93 (m, 2H, meta **H**, p-MeOBz), 6.463 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$

= 3.5 Hz), 5.818 (t, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 9.5 Hz), 5.273 (dd, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 10 Hz), 4.613 (s, 2H, $CH_2C_6H_5$, ), 4.18-3.70 (m, 11H, $OCH_3$, $H_2$, $H_4$, $H_5$, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$, $CH_2Cl$), 3.867 (s, 3H, $CH_3$), 1.118 (s, 9H, $SiC(CH_3)_3$); $^{13}C$ n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 166.67 (**C**O), 165.85 (**C**O), 165.28 (**C**O), 91.23 ($C_1$), 61.91 ($C_6$), 55.51 ($OCH_3$), 40.62 ($CH_2Cl$), 40.25 ($CH_2Cl$), 26.98 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$), 19.41 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$)

**88 (β)** $^1H$ n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 7.99 (m, 2H, ortho **H**, p-MeOBz), 7.75 - 7.0 (m, 15H, aromatic), 6.93 (m, 2H, meta **H**, p-MeOBz), 5.83 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 8 Hz), 5.580 (t, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 9.5 Hz), 5.257 (dd, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 9.5 Hz), 4.560 (s, 2H, $CH_2C_6H_5$, ), 4.18-3.70 (m, 11H, $OCH_3$, $H_2$, $H_4$, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$, $CH_2Cl$), 3.867 (s, 3H, $CH_3$), 1.103 (s, 9H, $SiC(CH_3)_3$); $^{13}C$ n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 166.67 (**C**O), 165.85 (**C**O), 165.28 (**C**O), 92.93 ($C_1$), 61.91 ($C_6$), 55.51 ($OCH_3$), 40.62 ($CH_2Cl$), 40.25 ($CH_2Cl$), 26.98 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$), 19.41 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$)

Anal. calc. : A satisfactory elemental analysis could not be obtained.

## 4-*O*-Benzyl-6-*O*-*t*-butyldiphenylsilyl-2-*O*-chloroacetyl-3-*O*-*p*-methoxybenzoyl-D-glucopyranose (89)

Compound **88** (0.31 g, 0.39 mmol) was dissolved in 5 mL DMF and cooled to 0 °C. 41.57 mg (0.45 mmol) of hydrazine acetate were added and the solution stirred for one hour. Then 5 drops (approximately 100 μL) of acetic acid were added and the reaction mixture was diluted with dichloromethane, and the solution was extracted with water and then dried over sodium sulfate. The organic layer was condensed *in vacuo*. Column chromatography of the residue (ethyl acetate : hexane 2 : 5, trace acetic acid) provided **89** (0.2353 g, 84%) as an α/β mixture (ratio α:β; 1.4 : 1). $R_f$ = 0.43 (ethyl acetate : hexane 2 : 5).

**89 (α)** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 7.993 (m, 2H, ortho **H**, p-MeOBz), 7.8 - 7.1 (m, 15H, aromatic), 6.923 (m, 2H, meta **H**, p-MeOBz), 5.830 (dd, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{23}$ = 10 Hz, $J_{34}$ = 9 Hz), 5.473 (d, 1H, $H_1$,$J_{12}$ = 3.5 Hz), 5.062 (dd, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{12}$ = 3.5 Hz, $J_{23}$ = 10 Hz), 4.592 (s, 2H, $CH_2C_6H_5$, ), 4.15-3.80 (m, 9H, $OCH_3$, $H_4$, $H_5$, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$, $CH_2Cl$), 3.868 (s, 3H, $CH_3$), 2.807 (broad, 1H, OH), 1.12 (s, 9H, $SiC(CH_3)_3$); $^{13}$C n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 167.06 (**C**O), 165.35 (**C**O), 94.93 ($C_1$), 74.91 ($CH_2C_6H_5$), 62.57 ($C_6$), 55.50 ($OCH_3$), 40.63 ($CH_2Cl$), 27.00 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$), 19.42 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$)

**89 (β)** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 7.993 (m, 2H, ortho **H**, p-MeOBz), 7.8 - 7.1 (m, 15H, aromatic), 6.923 (m, 2H, meta **H**, p-MeOBz), 5.543 (t, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{23}$ = 9.5 Hz, $J_{34}$ = 9.5 Hz), 4.970 (d, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{12}$ = 8 Hz, $J_{23}$ = 10 Hz), 4.573 (s, 2H, $CH_2C_6H_5$), 4.15 - 3.80 (m, 9H, $OCH_3$, $H_4$, $H_5$, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$, $CH_2Cl$), 3.868 (s, 3H, $CH_3$), 2.910 (broad, 1H, OH), 1.12 (s, 9H, $SiC(CH_3)_3$); $^{13}$C n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 167.20 (CO), 163.82 (CO), 93.76 ($C_1$), 74.91 ($CH_2C_6H_5$), 62.57 ($C_6$), 55.50 ($OCH_3$), 40.78 ($CH_2Cl$), 27.00 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$), 19.42 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$)

Anal. calc. for **89** ($C_{39}H_{43}O_9ClSi$): C, 65.12; H, 6.02; Cl, 4.93. Found : C, 64.84; H, 6.06; Cl, 5.22.

## 4-*O*-Benzyl-6-*O*-*t*-butyldiphenylsilyl-2-*O*-chloroacetyl-3-*O*-*p*-methoxybenzoyl-α-D-glucopyranosyl bromide (90)

Compound **89** (36.41 mg, 50.60 μmol) was dissolved in 1 mL of anhydrous dichloromethane containing 0.1 mL DMF and cooled to 0 °C. To this solution 7 μL (70 μmol) of oxalylbromide were added and the reaction was stirred for 1 hour at 0 °C. It was then diluted with dichloromethane, extracted with ice cold water and the organic layer dried over sodium sulfate. It was then

subsequently evaporated *in vacuo* to provide **90**. The product was not further purified and was used directly in the following glycosidation. $R_f$ = 0.78 (ethyl acetate : hexane 1 : 2).

**4-*O*-Benzyl-6-*O*-*t*-butyldiphenylsilyl-2-*O*-chloroacetyl-3-*O*-*p*-methoxybenzoyl-D-glucopyranose trichloroacetimidate (92)**

Compound **89** (0.23531 g, 0.327 mmol) was dissolved in 3.5 mL of anhydrous dichloromethane and cooled to -22° C. To this solution 0.65 mL (6.5 mmol) of trichloroacetonitrile and 55 µL (0.37 mmol) of DBU were added sequentially. The reaction was stirred for 10 minutes at -22°C and then the solvent was removed *in vacuo*. Column chromatography (short silica column) of the residue (ethyl acetate : hexane 1 : 2) provided **92** (0.24183 g., 86%) as an α/β mixture (ratio α:β; 1.75 : 1). $R_f$ = 0.55 (β anomer) and 0.67 (α anomer) (ethyl acetate : hexane 1 : 2).

**92 (α)** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 8.622 (s, 1H, $=NH_\alpha$), 8.00 (m, 2H, ortho H, p-MeOBz), 7.75 - 7.05 (m, 15H, aromatic), 6.938 (m, 2H, meta H, p-MeOBz), 6.648 (d, 1H, $H_{1\alpha}$, $J_{12}$ = 3.8 Hz), 5.950 (t, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 9.5 Hz), 5.303 (dd, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 10 Hz), 4.603 (s, 2H, $CH_2C_6H_5$, ), 4.22 - 3.80 (m, 9H, $OCH_3$, $H_4$, $H_5$, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$, $CH_2Cl$), 3.862 (s, 3H, $CH_3$), 1.113 (s, 9H, $SiC(CH_3)_3$); $^{13}$C n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 166.82 (CO), 165.20 (CO), 161.11 (CNH), 93.36 ($C_1$), 75.18 ($CH_2C_6H_5$), 62.16 ($C_6$), 55.49 ($OCH_3$), 40.35 ($CH_2Cl$), 26.96 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$), 19.39 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$)

**92 (β)** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 8.725 (s, 1H, $=NH_\beta$), 8.00 (m, 2H, ortho H, p-MeOBz), 7.75 - 7.05 (m, 15H, aromatic), 6.938 (m, 2H, meta H, p-MeOBz), 5.983 (d, 1H, $H_{1\beta}$, $J_{12}$ = 8 Hz), 5.637 (t, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{23}$ = 9.5 Hz, $J_{34}$ = 9.5 Hz),

5.443 (dd, 1H, $H_2$,$J_{12}$ = 8 Hz, $J_{23}$ = 9.5 Hz), 4.685 (d, 1H, $CH_2C_6H_5$, $J_{gem}$ = 10.5 Hz), 4.633 (d, 1H, $CH_2C_6H_5$, $J_{gem}$ = 10.5 Hz), 4.22 - 3.80 (m, 9H, $OCH_3$, $H_4$, $H_5$, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$, $CH_2Cl$), 3.862 (s, 3H, $CH_3$), 3.690 (dt, 1H, $H_5$, $J_{45}$ = 9.5 Hz, $J_{56}$ = 2.5 Hz, $J_{56'}$ = 2.5 Hz), 1.10 (s, 9H, $SiC(CH_3)_3$); $^{13}C$ n.m.r. ($CDCi_3$): δ 166.01 (CO), 165.35 (CO), 160.83 (CNH), 95.38 ($C_1$), 75.07 ($CH_2C_6H_5$), 61.99 ($C_6$), 55.49 ($OCH_3$), 40.35 ($CH_2Cl$), 26.96 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$), 19.39 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$)

Anal. calc. : A satisfactory elemental analysis could not be obtained.

**Octyl 4-*O*-benzyl-6-*O*-*t*-butyldiphenylsilyl-2-*O*-chloroacetyl-3-*O*-*p*-methoxybenzoyl-β-D-glucopyranoside (93) and 4-O-Benzyl-6-*O*-*t*-butyldiphenylsilyl-3-*O*-*p*-methoxybenzoyl-1,2-*O*-(n-octyloxy-2-chloroethylidene)-D-glucopyranose (91)**

a) Compound **92** (α/β mixture) (0.16285 g, 0.188 mmol) was dissolved in dichloromethane : methane (1 : 9) and cooled to -22 °C. To this solution 0.15 mL (0.95 mmol) of octyl alcohol was added with the subsequent addition of trace trifluoromethane sulfonic acid by capillary (1 to 2 μL). After 10 minutes of reaction time the reaction was quenched by the addition of triethylamine. It was then chromatographed on Woelm neutral alumina gel in ethyl acetate : hexane (1 : 9). To further purify the product, it was then chromatographed on silica gel (ethyl acetate : dichloromethane : hexane 1 : 3 : 16) to provide **93** (34.1 mg, 22%) as well as the 2-*O*-deacylated product, **94** (33.28 mg, 23%), the orthoester **91** (18.06 mg, 12%) and the α glycoside (9.3 mg, 6%). $R_f$ = 0.25 (**93**), 0.30 (α glycoside), ≅ 0 (**94**) and 0.39 (**91**) (ethyl acetate : dichloromethane : hexane 1 : 3 : 16).

b) Compound **92** (α/β mixture) (48.86 mg, 56.6 μmol) was dissolved in 0.5 mL of dichloromethane : cyclohexane (1 : 2), 45 μL (0.28 mmol) of octyl alcohol were then added and the reaction mixture cooled to -22 °C. Then 8 μL (65 μmol) of boron trifluoride etherate was added. After 10 minutes of reaction time the reaction was diluted with dichloromethane, extracted with water, dried over sodium sulfate and condensed *in vacuo*. The residue was dissolved in dichloromethane : methanol (1 : 1) and hydrolysed directly with hydrazine acetate to provide **94** (15.46 mg, 36%).

c) Compound **92** (α/β mixture) (61.84 mg, 71.6 μmol) and 45 mg (96 μmol) of **53** were dissolved in 1 mL of dichloromethane, 4 A molecular sieves were added and the mixture cooled to -78 °C. Then 12 μL (97 μmol) of boron trifluoride etherate was added. After 1 hour of reaction time the reaction was quenched with triethylamine, diluted with dichloromethane and filtered. The filtrate was extracted with water, sodium hydrogen carbonate, water and then dried over sodium sulfate and condensed *in vacuo*. Column chromatography of the residue (silica gel) (ethyl acetate : dichloromethane : hexane, 0.5 : 2.5 : 9) provided only the orthoester as product. No glycoside could be detected. $R_f$ = 0.29, orthoester (ethyl acetate : dichloromethane : hexane, 0.5 : 2.5 : 9)

d) n-Octanol (32 μL, 0.20 mmol) was dissolved in 0.6 mL of acetonitrile, 4 A sieves, 23.71 mg (65.8 μmol) of mercuric bromide and 14.90 mg (59 μmol) of mercuric cyanide were then added and the reaction mixture cooled to 0 °C. Bromide **90** (50 μmol) in 30 μL of anhydrous acetonitrile was added to the reaction mixture. After 3 hours of reaction the mixture was filtered through celite and the filtrate was condensed *in vacuo*. The residue was extracted with dichloromethane. The dichloromethane solution was washed with KCl,

saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate, water, saline solution and then dried over sodium sulfate and condensed *in vacuo*. T.l.c. of the products revealed only orthoester **91** and anomeric hydrolysis products.

e) n-Octanol (20 μL, 0.13 mmol) was dissolved in 0.5 mL of acetonitrile, 20.55 mg (80 μmol) of silver trifluoromethane sulfonate and 50 μL (0.42 mmol) of tetramethylurea and the reaction mixture left at room temperature. Compound **90** (41 μmol) was added as a solution in 0.5 mL of anhydrous dichloromethane. After 30 minutes lutidene was added and the mixture filtered. The filtrate was diluted with dichloromethane and extracted with water, hydrochloric acid, sodium hydrogen carbonate, water and was then dried over sodium sulfate. The solution was passed over a column of Woelm neutral alumina and eluted with dichloromethane. The eluant was condensed *in vacuo* to provide **91**, the orthoester.

**93** $^1$H n.m.r. δ 8.0 (m, 2H, ortho **H**, p-MeOBz), 7.82 - 7.00 (m, 15H, aromatic), 6.93 (m, 2H, meta **H**, p-MeOBz), 5.537 (t, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 10 Hz), 5.122 (dd, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 10 Hz), 4.600 (s, 2H, $CH_2C_6H_5$), 4.568 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 8 Hz), 4.0 - 3.8 (m, 9H, $H_4$, $H_5$, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$, $CH_2Cl$, $OCH_3$) 3.493 (m, 2H, $OCH_2(CH_2)_6CH_3$), 1.08 (s, 9H, $SiC(CH_3)_3$)

**91** $^1$H n.m.r. δ 8.1 - 7.9 (m, 2H, ortho **H**, p-MeOBz), 7.80 - 7.00 (m, 15H, aromatic), 7.0 - 6.9 (m, 2H, meta **H**, p-MeOBz), 5.945 (d,1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 5.5 Hz), 5.631 (t, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 3 Hz), 4.813 (d, 1H, $CH_2C_6H_5$, $J_{gem}$ = 11.5 Hz), 3.527 (t broad, 2H, $OCH_2(CH_2)_6CH_3$)

**Octyl 4-*O*-benzyl-6-*O*-*t*-butyldiphenylsilyl-3-*O*-*p*-methoxybenzoyl-β-D-glucopyranoside (94)**

Compound **93** (29.77 mg, 35.8 μmol) was dissolved in 2.25 mL of methanol : dichloromethane (1 : 1.25) and 6.5 mg (70 μmol) of hydrazine acetate were added at room temperature. The reaction was stirred for 20 hours at room temperature and then 5.0 mg (54 μmol) more hydrazine acetate was added. The mixture was stirred for a further 7 hours (27 hours total) and then diluted with dichloromethane, extracted with water, 1M hydrochloric acid, saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate and water in sequence. The organic layer was dried over sodium sulfate and the solvent was removed *in vacuo*. Column chromatography of the residue (ethyl acetate : dichloromethane : hexane 1 : 2 : 9) provided **94** (14.38 mg., 54%) $R_f$ = 0.23 (ethyl acetate : dichloromethane : hexane 1 : 2 : 9).

$[\alpha]_D^{22}$ = -52.30 (c 0.3, dichloromethane)

**94** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 8.05 (m, 2H, ortho H, p-MeOBz), 7.70 - 7.00 (m, 15H, aromatic), 6.94 (m, 2H, meta H, p-MeOBz), 5.410 (t,1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 9.5 Hz), 4.650 (d, 1H, $CH_2C_6H_5$, $J_{gem}$ = 11 Hz), 4.600 (d, 1H, $CH_2C_6H_5$, $J_{gem}$ = 11 Hz), 4.407 (d, 1H, $H_{1\beta}$, $J_{12}$ = 7.8 Hz), 4.30 - 3.80 (m, 7H, $OCH_3$, $H_4$, $H_5$, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$, $OCH_2(CH_2)_6CH_3$), 3.870 (s, 3H, $CH_3$), 3.627 (t broad, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 9.5 Hz), 3.557 (m, 1H, $OCH_2(CH_2)_6CH_3$), 3.480 (dt, 1H, $H_5$, $J_{45}$ = 9.5 Hz, $J_{56}$ = 3 Hz, $J_{56'}$ = 3 Hz), 2.563 (dd, 1H, OH, $J_{2OH}$ = 1.5 Hz); $^{13}$C n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 166.39 (CO),102.65 ($C_1$), 74.93 ($CH_2C_6H_5$), 73.29 ($OCH_2(CH_2)_6CH_3$), 55.51 ($OCH_3$), 26.90 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$), 19.40 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$), 14.40 ($OCH_2(CH_2)_6CH_3$)

Anal. calc. for **94** ($C_{45}H_{58}O_8Si$): C, 71.58; H, 7.74. Found : C, 71.25; H, 7.42.

**Octyl 4-*O*-benzyl-6-*O*-*t*-butyldiphenylsilyl-3-*O*-*p*-methoxybenzoyl-2-*O*-trifluoromethanesulfonyl-β-D-glucopyranoside (95)**

Compound **94** (30.37 mg, 40.21 μmol) was dissolved in 750 μL of pyridine : dichloromethane (1 : 19) and trace DMAP was added and the reaction mixture cooled to 0 °C. Then 15 μL (89 μmol) of trifluoromethanesulfonic anhydride was added. The reaction was stirred for 20 minutes at 0 °C and then diluted with dichloromethane. The organic solution was sequentially extracted with water, 1M hydrochloric acid, saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate and water. The organic layer was dried over sodium sulfate and the solvent was removed *in vacuo*. Column chromatography of the residue (ethyl acetate : hexane 1 : 1) provided **95** (31.2 mg, 89%), $R_f$ = 0.70 (ethyl acetate : hexane 1 : 1).

**95** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 8.05 (m, 2H, ortho H, p-MeOBz), 7.80 - 7.10 (m, 15H, aromatic), 6.95 (m, 2H, meta H, p-MeOBz), 5.681 (t,1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 9.5 Hz), 4.737 (dd, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 10 Hz), 4.620 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 8 Hz), 4.593 (d, 1H, $CH_2C_6H_5$, $J_{gem}$ = 10.5 Hz), 4.548 (d, 1H, $CH_2C_6H_5$, $J_{gem}$ = 10.5 Hz), 3.954 (t, 1H, $H_4$, $J_{34}$ = 9.5 Hz), 3.912 (m, 1H, $OCH_2(CH_2)_6CH_3$), 3.562 (m, 1H, $OCH_2(CH_2)_6CH_3$), 3.496 (dt, 1H, $H_5$, $J_{56}$ = 2.5 Hz, $J_{56'}$ = 2.5 Hz), 1.27 (m, 2H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_6CH_3$), 1.08 (s, 9H, $SiC(CH_3)_3$), 0.88 (t secondary, 3H, $OCH_2(CH_2)_6CH_3$); $^{13}$C n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): 99.63 ($C_1$), 70.52 ($C_6$)

**Octyl 4-*O*-benzyl-6-*O*-*t*-butyldiphenylsilyl-2-*O*-*p*-methoxybenzoyl-β-D-mannopyranoside (96) and Octyl 4-*O*-benzyl-6-*O*-*t*-butyldiphenylsilyl-3-*O*-*p*-methoxybenzoyl-β-D-mannopyranoside (97)**

a) A solution of 39.6 μmol of the triflate **95** in 1 mL of nitromethane containing 10 μL water and 10 μL of lutidene was heated to 60 °C. After one hour of reaction time the reaction showed both mannosides and decomposition products. The reaction mixture was therefore diluted with dichloromethane, extracted with water, 1M hydrochloric acid, saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate and water. The organic layer was dried over sodium sulfate and the solvent was removed *in vacuo*. Column chromatography of the residue (dichloromethane : methanol 99 : 1) provided **96** (15 mg., 50%, only 1/2 of this weight is **96**) and **97** (4 mg, 13%) $R_f$ = 0.30 (**96**); 0.71, (**97**) (dichloromethane : methanol 99 : 1). Both products were contaminated with furanose byproducts.

**96** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 7.86 (m, 2H, ortho H, p-MeOBz), 6.90 (m, 2H, meta H, p-MeOBz), 5.628 (d, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 3 Hz), 4.726 (d, 1H, $OCH_2C_6H_5$, $J_{gem}$ = 12 Hz), 4.607 (d, 1H, $OCH_2C_6H_5$, $J_{gem}$ = 12 Hz), 4.557 (s broad, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = <1 Hz)

**97** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 8.07 (m, 2H, ortho H, p-MeOBz), 6.93 (m, 2H, meta H, p-MeOBz), 5.195 (dd, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 9.5 Hz, $J_{23}$= 3 Hz), 4.756 (d, 1H, $OCH_2C_6H_5$, $J_{gem}$ = 10.5 Hz), 4.648 (d, 1H, $OCH_2C_6H_5$, $J_{gem}$ = 10.5 Hz), 4.643 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 1 Hz)

## 1,2,3,6-Tetra-*O*-benzoyl-D-glucopyranose (98)

D-glucose (55.81 g, 0.310 moles) was dissolved in 300 mL of dichloromethane - pyridine (2 : 1) containing 10 mL of triethylamine and cooled to 0 °C. To this solution 144 mL (1.24 moles) of benzoyl chloride was added dropwise with stirring. The solution was stirred for 3 to 4 hours and then allowed to come to room temperature. The reaction mixture was kept at room temperature for a further 12 hours. At that time it was diluted with dichloromethane and extracted with water, 1M hydrochloric acid, saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate, water, dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated *in vacuo* . The remaining residue, containing the pentabenzoate and the tetrabenzoate as major compounds was purified by column chromatography (rapidly, on several portions of silica gel) ([methanol : dichloromethane 1 : 99] : hexane, 2 : 1) to provide the tetrabenzoate **98** as an α and β mixture (50%), $R_f$ = 0.42 (α) and 0.30 (β) (methanol : dichloromethane 1 : 99).

**98** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 8.2 - 7.8 (m, 8H, aromatic), 7.7 - 7.2 (m, 12H, aromatic), 6.210 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 7.9 Hz), 5.753 (dd, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 9.5 Hz), 5.673 (dd, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 9 Hz), 4.863 (dd, 1H, $H_6$, $J_{56}$ = 3.2 Hz), 4.630 (dd, 1H, $H_{6'}$, $J_{56'}$ = 1.6 Hz, $J_{66'}$ = 12 Hz), 4.067 (ddd, 1H, $H_5$, $J_{45}$ = 9 Hz), 4.007 (t, 1H, $H_4$, $J_{45}$ = 9 Hz, $J_{34}$ = 9 Hz), 3.733 (broad, 1H, OH); $^{13}$C n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 167.23 (CO), 167.01 (CO), 165.38 (CO), 164.73 (CO), 92.80 ($C_1$), 63.10 ($C_6$).

Anal Calc. for **98** ($C_{30}H_{35}O_6$): C, 68.45; H, 4.73; Found : C, 68.37; H, 4.74.

## 1,2,3,6-Tetra-*O*-benzoyl-4-*O*-benzyl-D-glucopyranose (99)

Compound **98** (2.64 g, 4.43 mmol) was dissolved in 60 mL of dichloromethane - cyclohexane (1 : 2) and 1.25 mL (6.73 mmol) of benzyloxy - 2,2,2-trichloroacetimidate and approximately 60 µL of trifluoromethane sulfonic acid were added sequentially. The reaction mixture was brought to 40 °C and left stirring at that temperature for 72 hours. It was then quenched by the addition of triethylamine, filtered to remove insoluble trichloroacetimidate, diluted with ethyl acetate and extracted with water, 1M hydrochloric acid, saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate, dried over sodium sulfate and condensed *in vacuo*. Column chromatography of the residue (ethyl acetate : dichloromethane : hexane 1 : 2 : 9) provided **99** (1.35 g, 45%) as an α/β mixture (ratio dependent upon the ratio in the starting material) and the starting material **98** (0.68 g, 26%), $R_f$ = 0.28 (**99** α) and 0.21 (**99** β) (ethyl acetate : dichloromethane : hexane 1 : 2 : 9).

**99** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 8.15 - 7.0 (m, 25H, aromatic), 6.204 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 8 Hz), 5.937 (secondary, 1H, $H_3$), 5.735 (dd, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 9.8 Hz), 4.617 (s broad, 2H, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$), 4.620 (d, 1H, $OCH_2C_6H_5$, $J_{gem}$ =11 Hz), 4.563 (d, 1H, $OCH_2C_6H_5$, $J_{gem}$ =11 Hz), 4.18 - 4.08 (m, 1H, $H_5$, $H_4$); $^{13}$C n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 166.08 (CO), 165.50 (CO), 165.40 (CO), 164.59 (CO), 92.67 ($C_1$), 74.82 ($OCH_2C_6H_5$), 62.78 ($C_6$).

Anal Calc. for **99** ($C_{41}H_{34}O_{10}$): Calc : C, 71.71; H, 4.99; Found : C, 71.42; H, 4.83.

## 2,3,6-Tri-*O*-benzoyl-4-*O*-benzyl-α-D-glucopyranosyl bromide (100)

Compound **99** (0.10123 g, 0.148 mmol) was dissolved in 200 μL of dichloromethane and cooled to 0 °C. Then 200 μL of 45 % hydrogen bromide in acetic acid solution was added. There was no acetic anhydride added to the HBr solution. The reaction mixture was stirred at this temperature for 45 minutes and at this point t.l.c. showed only product and hydrolysis products. The solution was diluted with dichloromethane and extracted with water and then saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate, dried over sodium sulfate and condensed *in vacuo*. Column chromatography of the residue (ethyl acetate : dichloromethane : hexane 1 : 2 : 6) provided **100** (74.56 mg, 79%), $R_f$ = 0.58 (ethyl acetate : dichloromethane : hexane 1 : 2 : 6).

**100** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 8.20 - 7.0 (m, 20H, aromatic), 6.772 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 4 Hz), 6.191 (t, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 10 Hz), 5.226 (dd, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 10 Hz), 4.65 (m, 2H, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$, $J_{56}$ = 3 Hz, $J_{56'}$ = 3 Hz), 4.648 (d, 1H, $OCH_2C_6H_5$, $J_{gem}$ =11 Hz), 4.590 (d, 1H, $OCH_2C_6H_5$, $J_{gem}$ = 11 Hz), 4.489 (dt, 1H, $H_5$), 4.489 (t, 1H, $H_4$, $J_{45}$ = 10 Hz)

## 1,2-*O*-Benzylidene-3,6-di-*O*-benzoyl-4-*O*-benzyl-D-glucopyranose (101)

Compound **100** (1.16 g, 1.796 mmol) was dissolved in 3 mL of anhydrous acetonitrile. To this solution 0.11 g (2.91 mmol) of sodium borohydride and 0.24 g (0.65 mmol) of tetra-n-butylammonium iodide were added sequentially. The reaction mixture was stirred for 2 hours at room

temperature. It was then diluted with ethyl acetate and extracted with water, 1M hydrochloric acid, saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate and water, foolowed by drying over sodium sulfate and condensation *in vacuo* to leave residue **101** (1.01 g, 99%) which was sufficiently pure to proceed to the next step. Column chromatography of the residue could be performed (ethyl acetate : dichloromethane : hexane 0.5 : 2.5 : 9) to provide **101** (61%).

**101 (exo)** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 8.20 - 7.0 (m, 20H, aromatic), 6.607 (s, 1H, $OOCHC_6H_5$), 5.777 (dd, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 4 Hz), 4.197 (dd, 1H, $H_4$, $J_{45}$ = 5 Hz); $^{13}$C n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 165.88 (CO), 165.32 (CO), 104.51 ($O_2HCC_6H_5$), 97.28 ($C_1$), 63.80 ($C_6$).

**101 (endo)** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 8.20 - 7.0 (m, 20H, aromatic), 5.930 (s, 1H, $OOCHC_6H_5$), 5.867 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 5 Hz), 5.805 (dd, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 1 Hz), 4.905 (d, 1H, $OCH_2C_6H_5$, $J_{gem}$ =12 Hz), 4.623 (d, 1H, $OCH_2C_6H_5$, $J_{gem}$ =12 Hz), 4.50 - 4.39 (m, 2H, $H_2$, $H_5$ or $H_6$), 4.37 - 4.24 (m, 2H, $H_{6'}$, $H_5$ or $H_6$), 3.810 (dt, 1H, $H_4$, $J_{45}$ = 8.5 Hz, $J_{24}$ = 1.5 Hz); $^{13}$C n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 166.07 (CO), 165.03 (CO), 103.51 ($O_2HCC_6H_5$), 96.77 ($C_1$), 71.55 ($CH_2C_6H_5$), 64.04 ($C_6$).

Anal Calc. for **101** ($C_{34}H_{30}O_8$): Calc : C, 72.07; H, 5.34; Found : C, 72.00; H, 5.37.

## 4-*O*-Benzyl-1,2-*O*-benzylidene-D-glucopyranose (102)

Crude **101** (0.92 g, 1.6 mmol) was dissolved in 1 mL of dichloromethane. To this solution 5 mL of a saturated sodium methoxide in methanol solution was added at room temperature. The reaction mixture was stirred for 30 minutes and then neutralized by the addition of glacial acetic acid in methanol.

The precipitated salt was filtered off and the filtrate was condensed *in vacuo*. Column chromatography of the residue (dichloromethane : methanol 97 : 3) provided **102** as an endo/exo mixture (7.5 : 1, endo : exo ratio) (0.4124 g, 71% over 2 steps), $R_f$ = 0.32 (exo) and 0.27 (endo) (dichloromethane : methanol 97 : 3).

**102 (exo)** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 7.6 - 7.2 (m, 10H, aromatic), 6.512 (s, 1H, $OOCHC_6H_5$), 5.667 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 5 Hz), 4.750 (d, 1H, $OCH_2C_6H_5$, $J_{gem}$ =11.5 Hz), 4.637 (d, 1H, $OCH_2C_6H_5$, $J_{gem}$ =11.5 Hz), 3.833 (ddd, 1H, $H_5$, $J_{56}$ = 3 Hz, $J_{56'}$ = 5 Hz); $^{13}$C n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 138.04 (CO), 137.32 (CO), 103.45 ($OH_2CC_6H_5$), 97.50 ($C_1$), 73.41 ($CH_2C_6H_5$), 62.16 ($C_6$).

**102 (endo)** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 7.6 - 7.2 (m, 10H, aromatic), 5.800 (s, 1H, $OOCHC_6H_5$), 4.710 (d, 1H, $OCH_2C_6H_5$, $J_{gem}$ =11.5 Hz), 4.553 (d, 1H, $OCH_2C_6H_5$, $J_{gem}$ =11.5 Hz), 4.297 (t broad, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 3.4 Hz), 4.153 (ddd, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 6 Hz, $J_{24}$ = 0.7 Hz), 3.920 (ddd, 1H, $H_5$, $J_{56}$ = 3 Hz, $J_{56'}$ = 4 Hz), 3.762 (dt broad, 1H, $H_6$, $J_{66'}$ = 12 Hz), 3.637 (broad, 1H, $H_{6'}$), 3.583 (ddd, 1H, $H_4$, $J_{45}$ = 9 Hz, $J_{24}$ = 1 Hz), 3.267 (d broad, 1H, OH [3], $J_{H,OH}$ = 5 Hz), 2.693 (t broad, 1H, OH [6], $J_{H,OH}$ = 5.5 Hz); $^{13}$C n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 137.86 (CO), 136.01 (CO), 102.52 ($H_2CC_6H_5$), 97.19 ($C_1$), 72.49 ($CH_2C_6H_5$), 61.99 ($C_6$).

Anal. calc. : A satisfactory elemental analysis coud not be obtained.

## 4-*O*-Benzyl-1,2-*O*-benzylidene-6-*O*-*t*-butyldiphenylsilyl-D-glucopyranose (103)

Compound **102** (0.83358 g, 2.33 mmol) was dissolved in 10 mL of anhydrous DMF. Then 0.45 g (6.6 mmol) of imidazole and 660 µL (2.54 mmol)

of *t*-butyldiphenylchlorosilane were added sequentially at room temperature. The reaction mixture was stirred for 30 minutes and then condensed *in vacuo*. The residue was taken up in dichloromethane and extracted sequentially with; water, 1M hydrochloric acid and saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate, then dried over sodium sulfate and condensed *in vacuo*. Column chromatography of the residue (ethyl acetate : dichloromethane : hexane 1 : 2 : 7.5) provided **103** (1.12 g, 81%), $R_f$ = 0.18 (endo) and 0.40 (exo) (ethyl acetate : dichloromethane : hexane 1 : 2 : 6)

**103 (endo)** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 7.8 - 7.15 (m, 20H, aromatic), 5.905 (s, 1H, $OOCHC_6H_5$), 5.790 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 5 Hz), 4.717 (d, 1H, $OCH_2C_6H_5$, $J_{gem}$ = 11.5 Hz), 4.566 (d, 1H, $OCH_2C_6H_5$, $J_{gem}$ = 11.5 Hz), 4.233 (ddd, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 4.5 Hz, $J_{24}$ = 0.5 Hz), 4.157 (q broad, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 5 Hz, $J_{3OH}$ = 6 Hz), 3.973 (ddd, 1H, $H_5$, $J_{45}$ = 9 Hz, $J_{56}$ = 3 Hz, $J_{56'}$ = 2 Hz), 3.840 (dd, 1H, $H_{6'}$, $J_{56'}$ = 2 Hz), 3.922 (dd, 1H, $H_6$, $J_{66'}$ = 11 Hz, $J_{56}$ = 3.2 Hz), 3.803 (ddd, 1H, $H_4$, $J_{34}$ = 5 Hz), 2.267 (d broad, 1H, OH, $J_{OHH}$ = 5 Hz), 1.060 (s, 9H, $SiC(CH_3)_3$); $^{13}$C n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 102.57 ($O_2HCC_6H_5$), 97.89 ($C_1$), 73.07 ($CH_2C_6H_5$), 63.47 ($C_6$), 26.91 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$), 19.35 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$).

Anal Calc. for **103** ($C_{36}H_{40}O_6Si$): C, 72.45; H, 6.76; Found : C, 72.71; H, 6.58.

## Octyl 3-*O*-(3,4,6-tri-*O*-acetyl-2-deoxy-2-phthalimido-α-D-mannopyranosyl)-4-*O*-benzyl-2-*O*-*p*-N,N-dimethylaminobenzoyl-6-*O*-*t*-butyldiphenylsilyl-β-D-mannopyranoside (106)

Compound **78** (11.12 mg, 14.5 μmol) was dissolved in 0.5 mL of anhydrous dichloromethane. Then 11.4 mg (44.4 μmol) of silver

trifluoromethanesulfonate and 3.5 μL (35.3 μmol) of lutidene as well as 4 A molecular sieves were added. To this a solution of the bromide **105** (11.96 mg, 23 μmol) in 0.3 mL of dry dichloromethane was added. After 10 minutes of reaction time the reaction was filtered and then diluted with dichloromethane and extracted sequentially with water, 1M hydrochloric acid and saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate and finally water. The organic layer was then dried over sodium sulfate and condensed *in vacuo*. Column chromatography of the residue (dichloromethane : methanol 1 :99) provided **106**, $R_f$ = 0.31 (dichloromethane : methanol 1 : 99)

**106** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3Cl_3$): δ 8.0 - 7.0 (m, 21H, aromatic), 6.267 (m, 2H, meta **H**, p-$Me_2$NBz), 5.859 (t, 1H, **H'**$_4$, $J_{45}$ = 10 Hz), 5.664 (dd, 1H, **H'**$_3$, $J_{34}$ = 9.5 Hz), 5.301 (dd, 1H, **H'**$_2$, $J_{23}$ = 7.5 Hz), 5.204 (s, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 0 Hz), 4.840 (dt, 1H, **H'**$_5$, $J_{56}$ = 2 Hz, $J_{56'}$ = 2 Hz), 4.645 (d, 1H, $OCH_2C_6H_5$, $J_{gem}$ = 10.5 Hz), 4.579 (s, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 0 Hz), 4.551 (d, 1H, $OCH_2C_6H_5$, $J_{gem}$ = 10.5 Hz), 4.55 - 4.45 (m, 2H, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$), 4.248 (d, 1H, **H'**$_1$, $J_{12}$ = 3 Hz), 4.162 (t, 1H, $H_4$, $J_{45}$ = 9.5 Hz), 4.043 (dd, 1H, $H_6$ or $H_{6'}$, $J_{56}$ = 2.5 Hz, $J_{66'}$ = 12 Hz), 3.985 (d, $H_6H_{6'}$, or $H_{6'}H_6$), 3.921 (m, 1H, $OCH_2(CH_2)_6CH_3$), 3.468 (m, 1H, $OCH_2(CH_2)_6CH_3$), 3.043 (d, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 9.5 Hz), 2.8 (s, 6H, $(CH_3)_2N$), 2.20, 2.04, 1.83 (s, 3H, OAc), 1.25 (m, 10H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$), 1.12 (s, 9H, $SiC(CH_3)_3$), 0.86 (t secondary, 3H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$)

## 1,3,4,6-Tetra-*O*-acetyl-2-phthalimido-2-deoxy-D-mannopyranose (108)

2-Amino-2-deoxy-mannopyranose hydrochloride salt **107** (0.8363 g, 3.88 mmol) was dissolved in 8 mL of methanol and 4 mL of pyridine. Then 0.54

mL (1 equivalent) of triethylamine was added, followed by 1.73 g (3 equivalents) of phthalic anhydride. After 10 minutes the reaction was diluted with dichloromethane and extracted 3 times with water. The water layers were combined and evaporated *in vacuo*. The residue was co-evaporated *in vacuo* with toluene to remove residual water to provide the intermediate phthalic acid adduct, $R_f$ = 0.35 (butanol : n-propanol : 0.1M hydrochloric acid 1 : 2 : 1).

The crude product was dissolved in 20 mL of pyridine and treated with 5.6 mL of acetic anhydride and trace DMAP at room temperature for 12 hours. The reaction mixture was diluted with dichloromethane, extracted with water, 1M hydrochloric acid, saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate and then dried over sodium sulfate and evaporated *in vacuo*. Column chromatography of the residue (ethylacetate : hexane 1 : 2) provided **108** (0.83 g, 45 %), $R_f$ = 0.35 (ethyl acetate : hexane 1 : 1)

$^1$H n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): for data see table 5

Anal calc. for **108** ($C_{22}H_{23}O_{11}N$): Calc.; C, 55.34; H, 4.86: N, 2.93; Found; C, 55.78; H, 4.88; N, 3.01.

## 3,4,6-Tri-*O*-acetyl-2-phthalimido-2-deoxy-α-D-mannopyranosyl bromide (105)

Compound **108** (0.1371 g, 0.287 mmol) was dissolved in 0.5 mL of dichloromethane. To this solution 1 mL of 3 % HBr in glacial acetic acid containing 0.1 mL of acetic anhydride was added. The reaction was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour when t.l.c. showed only the desired bromide and some hydrolysis products. The reaction was diluted with dichloromethane and extracted with water, then subsequently 2 times with saturated sodium

hydrogen carbonate. The organic layer was then dried over sodium sulfate and evaporated *in vacuo* to provide **105**, $R_f$ = 0.32 (toluene : ether 2 : 1).

$^1H$ n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): for data see table 5

**Methyl 3,4,6-tetra-*O*-acetyl-2-phthalimido-2-deoxy-D-mannopyranoside (109)**

Methanol (0.15 mL, 3.57 mmol) was mixed with 2 mL of anhydrous dichloromethane, 4 A molecular sieves were added and the mixture cooled to 0 °C. After it had reached this temperature, 74 µL (0.63 mmol) of lutidene and 0.15 g (0.58 mmol) of silver trifluoromethane sulfonate were added. The bromide **105** (0.28 mmol) was dissolved in 2 mL of anhydrous dichloromethane and slowly dripped into the above mixture. After 30 minutes of reaction time t.l.c. of the mixture showed complete conversion of the bromide to the product and the reaction mixture was diluted with dichloromethane. The organic layer was then filtered, extracted with water, 1M hydrochloric acid, saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate, dried over sodium sulfate and condensed *in vacuo*. Column chromatography of the residue (ethyl acetate : hexane, 2 : 3) provided **109** (58 mg, 45 %), $R_f$ = 0.27 (ethyl acetate : hexane 2 : 3)

$^1H$ n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): for data see table 5

$^{13}C$ n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): for data see table 6

**Methyl 3,4,6-tetra-*O*-acetyl-2-acetamido-2-deoxy-α-D-mannopyranoside (110)**

Compound **109** (50 mg, 0.11 mmol) was refluxed with 25 μL (0.52 mmol, approximately 4 equivalents) of hydrazine hydrate in 4 mL of methanol for 24 hours. The methanol was evaporated off *in vacuo* and the residue taken up in dry pyridine. 0.1 mL of acetic anhydride and trace 4-N,N dimethyl aminopyridine was added and the reaction mixture stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was then diluted with dichloromethane, extracted with water, 1M hydrochloric acid, saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate, dried over sodium sulfate and condensed *in vacuo*. Column chromatography of the residue (ethyl acetate : hexane, 2 : 1) provided **110** (36.18 mg, 90%), $R_f$ = 0.25 (ethyl acetate : hexane 2 : 1)

$^1$H n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): for data see table 5

$^{13}$C n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): for data see table 6

**Methyl 2-acetamido-2-deoxy-α-D-mannopyranoside (111)**

Compound **110** (36 mg) was dissolved in 0.2 mL of methanol and 0.2 mL of saturated sodium methoxide in methanol was added. After 30 minutes of stirring at room temperature the reaction was treated with Dowex-50 $H^+$ resin until neutral, filtered to remove the resin and evaporated *in vacuo* to provide **111** quantitatively.

$^1$H n.m.r. ($CD_3OD$): for data see table 5

$^{13}$C n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): for data see table 6

**3-*O*-(3,4,6-Tri-*O*-acetyl-2-deoxy-2-phthalimido-α-D-mannopyranosyl)-1,2:5,6-di-*O*-isopropylidene-D-glucopyranose (112)**

Compound **44** (52 mg, 0.2 mmol) was dissolved in 1 mL of dichloromethane and 51 μL (0.44 mmol) of lutidene and 0.141 g (0.55 mmol) silver trifluoromethanesulfonate were added. To this solution a solution of the bromide **105** (0.2 g, 0.4 mmol) in 1 mL of dichloromethane was added dropwise at room temperature. After 1 hour t.l.c. of the reaction revealed 2 products and a small amount of hydrolysis products. The reaction mixture was filtered and the filtrate diluted with dichloromethane and then sequentially extracted with water, 1M hydrochloric acid, saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate and water. The organic layer was then dried over sodium sulfate and condensed *in vacuo*. Column chromatography of the residue (toluene : ethyl acetate, 3 : 1) provided **112** and the 1 : 1 adduct of the hydrolysed bromide **105**. $R_f$ = 0.25 (**112**) and 0.31 (1 : 1 adduct) (toluene : ethyl acetate, 3 :1). There was extensive overlap of the fractions and only pure fractions of **112** were collected for n.m.r. analysis.

$^1$H n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 7.84 (m, 4H, phthalimido), 7.74 (m, 4H, phthalimido), 5.895 (d, 1H, $H'_1$, $J_{12}$ = 5.2 Hz), 5.832 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 3.2 Hz), 5.337 (t, 1H, $H'_3$, $J_{34}$ = 4.5 Hz), 5.258 (dd, 1H, $H'_4$, $J_{45}$ = 7.5 Hz), 4.820 (t, 1H, $H'_2$, $J_{23}$ = 4.5 Hz), 4.744 (d, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 0 Hz), 4.451 (dd, 1H, $H'_6$, $J_{56}$ = 7.5 Hz), 4.296 (dd, 1H, $H'_{6'}$, $J_{66'}$ = 12 Hz), 4.232 (ddd, 1H, $H'_5$, $J_{56}$ = 3 Hz), 4.23 and 4.1 - 3.8 (m, 5H, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$, $H_4$, $H_3$, $H_5$), 2.16, 2.12, 2.00 (OAc), 1.48, 1.32, 1.18, 0.74 (isopropylidene methyl); $^{13}$C n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 170.68, 170.00, 169.63 (CO, acetates), 167.72 (CO, phthalimido), 112.05, 109.02

($O_2C(CH_3)_2$), 105.37 ($C_1$, $J_{C,H}$ = 183 Hz), 97.12 ($C_{1'}$, $J_{C,H}$ = 175 Hz), 67.42, 63.03 ($C_6$ and $C_{6'}$)

**3-*O*-(3,4,6-Tri-*O*-acetyl-2-deoxy-2-acetamido-α-D-mannopyranosyl)-1,2:5,6-di-*O*-isopropylidene-D-glucopyranose (113)**

Compound **112** (10 mg, 14 μmol) was dissolved in 1 mL of methanol and 20 μL (0.41 mmol) of hydrazine acetate was added. The mixture was refluxed for 12 hours and then condensed *in vacuo* and co-evaporated twice with toluene. The residue was taken up in 2 mL of pyridine and 1 mL of acetic anhydride and trace DMAP were added at room temperature. After 18 hours of stirring the mixture was diluted with dichloromethane and extracted with water, 1M hydrochloric acid, saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate and water. It was then dried over sodium sulfate and condensed *in vacuo*. Column chromatography of the residue (methanol : dichloromethane, 1 : 99) provided 113 (5.91 mg, 70 %), $R_f$ = 0.17 (methanol : dichloromethane, 1 : 99).

$^1H$ n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 5.935 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 3.8 Hz), 5.648 (d, 1H, NH, $J_{2H}$ = 9 Hz), 5.273 (dd, 1H, $H'_3$, $J_{34}$ = 10 Hz), 5.076 (d, 1H, $H'_1$, $J_{12}$ = 1.5 Hz), 5.067 (t, 1H, $H'_4$, $J_{45}$ = 10 Hz), 4.659 (ddd, 1H, $H'_2$, $J_{23}$ = 4.5 Hz), 4.607 (d, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 0 Hz), 4.4 - 3.9 (m, 8H, $H'_6$, $H'_{6'}$, $H'_5$, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$, $H_4$, $H_3$, $H_5$), 2.12, 2.07, 2.04, 1.99 (Ac), 1.50, 1.39, 1.32, 1.29 (isopropylidene methyl)

## Octyl 2,3,6-tri-*O*-benzoyl-β-D-mannopyranoside (115)

Octyl β-D-mannopyranoside (**114**) (0.42 g, 1.44 mmol) was dissolved in 20 mL of pyridine and the subsequent solution cooled to -10 °C. When the solution had attained this temperature benzoyl chloride (0.15 mL, 0.88 mmol) in 0.5 mL of dichloromethane was added dropwise. The reaction solution was then allowed to come to room temperature. After 10 hours the mixture was cooled to -10 °C again and a further 0.40 mL (3.44 mmol) of benzoyl chloride was added. Once again the reaction was allowed to attain room temperature. After a further 2 hours of reaction the solvent was removed *in vacuo*. The residue was taken up in dichloromethane and extracted with water, 1M hydrochloric acid, saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate and water. It was then dried over sodium sulfate and condensed *in vacuo*. Column chromatography of the residue (ethyl acetate : dichloromethane : hexane, 1 : 2 : 6) provided **115** (0.68 g, 78 %), $R_f$ = 0.18 (ethyl acetate : dichloromethane : hexane, 1 : 2 : 6).

$[\alpha]_D^{22}$ = -69.6 (c 0.8, dichloromethane)

$^1$H n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 8.3 - 7.2 (15H, aromatic), 5.827 (dd, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 3 Hz), 5.343 (dd, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 10 Hz), 4.867 (dd, 1H, $H_6$, $J_{56}$ = 4.3 Hz), 4.843 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 1 Hz), 4.703 (dd, 1H, $H_{6'}$, $J_{66'}$ = 12 Hz), 4.220 (t broad, 1H, $H_4$, $J_{45}$ = 9.5 Hz), 3.867 (m, 1H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$), 3.783 (ddd, 1H, $H_5$, $J_{56'}$ = 2.2 Hz), 3.560 (m, 1H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$), 3.067 (s, 1H, OH), 1.55 (m, 2H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$), 1.2 (m, 10H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$), 0.84 (t secondary, 3H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$); $^{13}$C n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): 167.04 (CO), 166.51 (CO), 165.67 (CO), 99.01 ($C_1$), 70.04 ($OCH_2(CH_2)_6CH_3$), 63.63 ($C_6$), 14.08 ($OCH_2(CH_2)_6CH_3$).

Anal. Calc. for **115** ($C_{35}H_{40}O_9$): Calc.; C, 69.52; H, 6.67; Found; C, 69.79; H, 6.69.

## Octyl 4-*O*-benzyl-β-D-mannopyranoside (117)

Compound **115** (0.65 g, 1.1 mmol) was dissolved in 9 mL of anhydrous dichloromethane : cyclohexane (1 : 2) at room temperature. Then 0.4 mL (2.1 mmol) of benzyloxy-2,2,2-trichloroacetimidate and 20 µL of trifluoromethane sulfonic acid were added sequentially. After 2 hours of reaction time 1 mL of methanol was added followed by the addition of 0.2 mL of triethylamine. The solvent was removed *in vacuo* and the residue co-evaporated twice with toluene. The residue was taken up in dichloromethane and one volume equivalent of hexane was added. Upon cooling this mixture 2,2,2-trichloroacetimidate precipitated from solution and was removed by filtration. The filtrate was extracted with water, 1M hydrochloric acid, saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate and water. It was then dried over sodium sulfate and condensed *in vacuo* to provide **116**, $R_f$ = 0.60 (ethyl acetate : dichloromethane : hexane, 1 : 2 : 6). The crude compound **116** was taken up in methanol and saturated sodium methoxide in methanol was added. After 24 hours of reaction the solution was neutralized with Dowex 50 $H^+$ resin and filtered. The filtrate was then condensed *in vacuo*. Column chromatography of the residue (dichloromethane : methanol, 99 : 1) provided **117** (0.2909 g, 71%), $R_f$ = 0.12 (dichloromethane : methanol, 99 : 1).

$[\alpha]_D^{22}$ = -33.5 (c 0.5, dichloromethane)

$^1$H n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 7.5 - 7.2 (15H, aromatic), 4.905 (d, 1H, $OCH_2C_6H_5$, $J_{gem}$ = 11 Hz), 4.703 (m, 1H, $OCH_2C_6H_5$, $J_{gem}$ = 11 Hz), 4.490 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$

= 0.8 Hz), 3.987 (d broad, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 1.5 Hz), 3.900 (m, 1H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$), 3.780 (dd broad, 1H, $H_{6'}$, $J_{6'6}$ = 12 Hz), 3.71 (d, 2H, $H_3$, $H_4$), 3.525 (m, 1H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$), 3.283 (ddd, 1H, $H_5$, $J_{56}$ = 4.5 Hz), 2.8 (broad, 2H, OH), 2.37 (broad, 1H, OH), 1.62 (m, 2H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$), 1.30 (m, 10H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$), 0.88 (t secondary, 3H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$); $^{13}C$ n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): 99.91 ($C_1$), 74.92 ($CH_2C_6H_5$), 70.11 ($OCH_2(CH_2)_6CH_3$), 62.18 ($C_6$), 14.11 ($OCH_2(CH_2)_6CH_3$).

Anal. calc. for **117** ($C_{21}H_{34}O_6$): C, 65.94; H, 8.96; Found : C, 66.00; H, 8.87.

**Octyl 4-*O*-benzyl-6-*O*-*t*-butyldiphenylsilyl-β-D-mannopyranoside (118)**

Compound **117** (0.27199 g, 0.712 mmol) was dissolved in 4 mL of anhydrous DMF and cooled to 0 °C. Then 0.15 g (2.2 mmol) of imidazole and 0.19 mL (0.73 mmol) of t-butyldiphenylchlorosilane were added sequentially. After 10 minutes of reaction time the solvent was removed *in vacuo* and the residue was taken up in dichloromethane and extracted with water, 1M hydrochloric acid, saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate and water. It was then dried over sodium sulfate and condensed *in vacuo*. Column chromatography of the residue (dichloromethane : methanol, 98 : 2) provided **118** (0.3701 g, 84%) as well as the starting material **117** (6.6 mg, 2.5%), $R_f$ = 0.12 (dichloromethane : methanol, 98 : 2) (**118**).

$[\alpha]_D^{22}$ = -29.2 (c 0.4, dichloromethane)

$^1H$ n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 7.8 - 7.2 (15H, aromatic), 4.907 (d, 1H, $OCH_2C_6H_5$, $J_{gem}$ = 11 Hz), 4.663 (m, 1H, $OCH_2C_6H_5$, $J_{gem}$ = 11 Hz), 4.477 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$

= 1 Hz), 3.97 (m, 3H, $H_2$, $H_6$, $H_{6'}$), 3.923 (m, 1H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$), 3.800 (t, 1H, $H_4$, $J_{45}$ = 9.5 Hz), 3.690 (ddd, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 9 Hz, $J_{23}$ = 3 Hz), 3.520 (m, 1H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$), 3.300 (ddd, 1H, $H_5$, $J_{56}$ = 3 Hz, $J_{56'}$ = 4 Hz), 2.67 (d, 1H, OH, $J_{3OH}$ = 8.5 Hz), 2.447 (d, 1H, OH, $J_{2OH}$ = 3.5 Hz), 1.64 (m, 2H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$), 1.30 (m, 10H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$), 1.06 (s, 9H, $SiC(CH_3)_3$), 0.88 (t secondary, 3H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$); $^{13}C$ n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): 99.47 ($C_1$), 74.96 ($CH_2C_6H_5$), 69.51 ($OCH_2(CH_2)_6CH_3$), 63.12 ($C_6$), 26.81 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$), 19.36 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$), 14.12 ($OCH_2(CH_2)_6CH_3$).

Anal. calc. for **118** ($C_{37}H_{52}O_6Si$): C, 71.57; H, 8.44; Found : C, 71.74; H, 8.33.

## Octyl 2-*O*-acetyl-4-*O*-benzyl-6-*O*-*t*-butyldiphenylsilyl-β-D-mannopyranoside (119) and Octyl 3-*O*-acetyl-4-*O*-benzyl-6-*O*-*t*-butyldiphenylsilyl-β-D-mannopyranoside (120)

Compound **118** (0.23137 g, 0.373 mmol) was dissolved in 3 mL of anhydrous benzene. Then 0.7 mL of triethyl orthoacetate and 1.2 mg of *p*-toluene sulfonic acid were added sequentially at room temperature. After 10 minutes of reaction time the orthoester had formed quantatively by t.l.c. ($R_f$ = 0.69, ethyl acetate : dichloromethane : hexane, 1 : 2 : 6). Triethylamine was added and the mixture was extracted with water. The organic layer was dried over sodium sulfate and the solvent was removed *in vacuo*. The residue was taken up in 3 mL of ethylacetate and cooled to 0 ° C. 1 mL of 80 % aqueous acetic acid was added. After 2 hours of reaction TLC revealed the presence of both **119** and **120** in a 4 : 1 ratio. Column chromatography of the mixture (ethyl acetate : hexane, 2 : 7) provided **119** (0.15741 g, 64%) as well as **120**

(0.06053 g, 24%), $R_f$ = 0.32 (**119**) and 0.47 (**120**) (ethyl acetate : hexane, 2 : 7).

**119** $[\alpha]_D^{22}$ = -32.3 (c 0.3, dichloromethane)

**119** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 8.0 - 7.0 (m, 15H, aromatic), 5.338 (d, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 2.5 Hz), 4.802 (d, 1H, $OCH_2C_6H_5$, $J_{gem}$ = 11.2 Hz), 4.704 (d, 1H, $OCH_2C_6H_5$, $J_{gem}$ = 11.2 Hz), 4.542 (d, 1H, $H_1$, $J_{12}$ = 0 Hz), 4.010 (dd, 1H, $H_6$, $J_{56}$ = 4 Hz), 3.970 (dd, 1H, $H_{6'}$, $J_{66'}$ = 10.8 Hz), 3.935 - 3.875 (m, 2H, $H_4$, $H_3$), 3.850 (m, 1H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$), 3.457 (m, 1H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$), 3.345 (m, 1H, $H_5$, $J_{56'}$ = 2.5 Hz), 2.45 (s broad, 1H, OH), 2.15 (s, 3H, OAc), 1.592 (m, 2H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$), 1.27 (m, 10H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$), 1.088 (s, 9H, $SiC(CH_3)_3$), 0.877 (t secondary, 3H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$); $^{13}$C n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): 171.25 (CO), 98.45 ($C_1$), 75.14 ($CH_2C_6H_5$), 69.69 ($OCH_2(CH_2)_6CH_3$), 63.04 ($C_6$), 26.78 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$), 19.42 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$), 21.02 ($OCCH_3$).

**120** $^1$H n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 7.8 - 7.1 (m, 15H, aromatic), 4.970 (dd, 1H, $H_3$, $J_{34}$ = 9.5 Hz), 4.720 (d, 1H, $OCH_2C_6H_5$, $J_{gem}$ = 11 Hz), 4.657 (d, 1H, $OCH_2C_6H_5$, $J_{gem}$ = 11 Hz), 4.182 (t, 1H, $H_4$, $J_{45}$ = 9.5 Hz), 4.123 (d broad, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 2.5 Hz), 3.973 (dd, 1H, $H_6$, $J_{56}$ = 3.7 Hz), 3.926 (dd, 1H, $H_{6'}$, $J_{66'}$ = 11.5 Hz), 3.904 (m, 1H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$), 3.521 (m, 1H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$), 3.353 (ddd, 1H, $H_5$, $J_{56'}$ = 2 Hz), 2.34 (s broad, 1H, OH), 2.08 (s, 3H, OAc), 1.60 (m, 2H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$), 1.24 (m, 10H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$), 1.05 (s, 9H, $SiC(CH_3)_3$), 0.84 (t secondary, 3H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$);

Anal Calc. for **119** ($C_{39}H_{54}O_7Si$): C, 70.06; H, 8.21; Found; C, 70.87; H, 8.14.

**Octyl 2-*O*-acetyl-3-*O*-(3,4,6-tri-*O*-acetyl-2-deoxy-2-phthalimido-α-D-mannopyranosyl)-4-*O*-benzyl-6-*O*-*t*-butyldiphenylsilyl-β-D-mannopyranoside (121)**

Compound **119** (0.13579 g, 0.205 mmol) were dissolved in 7 mL of anhydrous dichloromethane. Then 0.130 g (0.51 mmol) of silver trifluoromethanesulfonate and 1 g of crushed 4 A molecular sieves were added. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 10 minutes and then 50 µL (0.46 mmol) of lutidene were added. A solution of bromide **105** (0.43 mmol) in anhydrous dichloromethane was immediately added dropwise. After 0.5 hours of reaction the mixture was diluted with dichloromethane and filtered. The filtrate was extracted sequentially with water, 1M hydrochloric acid, saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate and water. It was then dried over sodium sulfate and condensed *in vacuo* . Column chromatography (ethylacetate : hexane, 1 : 2) provided **121** (0.112 g, 50%) as well as the starting material **119** (29.21 mg, 21%)

$[\alpha]_D^{22}$ = -31.2 (c 0.3, dichloromethane)

$^1$H n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): δ 8.0 - 6.8 (m, 19H, aromatic), 5.720 (d, 1H, $H'_1$, $J_{12}$ = 3.5 Hz), 5.513 (d, 1H, $H_2$, $J_{23}$ = 3 Hz), 5.415 (dd, 1H, $H'_4$, $J_{45}$ = 9 Hz), 5.353 (dd, 1H, $H'_3$, $J_{34}$ = 7 Hz), 4.937 (dd, 1H, $H'_2$, $J_{23}$ = 5 Hz), 4.587 (s, 2H, $OCH_2C_6H_5$), 4.42 - 4.30 (m, 3H), 4.04 (t, 1H, $H_4$, $J_{45}$ = 9 Hz, $J_{34}$ = 9.5 Hz), 3.98 - 3.80 (m, 4H), 3.457 (m, 1H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$), 3.257 (dt broad, 1H, $H_5$), 2.22, 2.16, 2.08, 1.92 (s, 3H, OAc), 1.60 (m, 2H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$), 1.30 (m, 10H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$), 1.06 (s, 9H, $SiC(CH_3)_3$), 0.89 (t secondary, 3H, $OCH_2CH_2(CH_2)_5CH_3$); $^{13}$C n.m.r. ($CDCl_3$): 170.76, 170.64, 169.86, 169.79, 167.66 (CO), 98.92 ($C'_1$, $J_{CH}$ = 175.6 Hz), 98.62 ($C_1$, $J_{CH}$ =

153.9 Hz), 74.70 ($\mathbf{C}H_2C_6H_5$), 69.30 ($O\mathbf{C}H_2(CH_2)_6CH_3$), 62.87 ($\mathbf{C}_6$), 62.57 ($\mathbf{C}'_6$), 26.78 ($SiC(\mathbf{C}H_3)_3$), 19.41 ($SiC(CH_3)_3$), 21.09, 20.86, 20.79, 20.67 ($OC\mathbf{C}H_3$), 14.11 ($OCH_2(CH_2)_6\mathbf{C}H_3$).

Anal Calc. for **121** ($C_{59}H_{73}NO_{16}Si$): Calc.: C, 65.60; H, 6.80; N, 1.30. Found; C, 65.34; H, 6.66; N, 1.63.

## Bibliography


1) Barker, S.A.; Chem. Britain (July, **1990**) : 665 - 668 (1990)

2) Lang, L, Reitman, M., Tang, J., Roberts, R.M., Kornfeld, S.; J. Biol. Chem. **259** : 14663 - 14671 (1984)

3) Neufeld, E.F., Ashwell, G.; in "The Biochemistry of Glycoproteins and Proteoglycans" (Lennarz, W.; ed.) 252 - 257 (1980) Plenum Press. New York.

4) Balduyck, M., Mizon, C., Loutfi, H., Richet, C., Roussel, P., Mizon, J.; Eur. J. Biochem. **158** : 417 - 422 (1986)

5) Lemieux, R.U., Bundle, D.R., Baker, D.A.; J. Am. Chem. Soc. **97** ; 4076 - 4083 (1975)

6) Garegg, P.J.; Chem. Britain (July, **1990**) : 669 - 674 (1990)

7) Kawasaki, T., Ii, M., Kozutsumi, Y., Yamashina, I.; Carbohydr. Res. **151** : 197 - 206 (1986)

8) Baezinger, J.U., Fiete, D.; J. Biol. Chem. **254** : 9795 - 9799 (1979)

9) Mizouchi, T., Spellman, M.W., Larkin, M., Solomon, J., Basa, L.J., Feizi, T.; Biochem. J. **254** : 599 - 603 (1988)

10) Basak, S. and Compans, R.W. J. Virol. **63** : 3164 - 3167 (1989)

11) Piller, F., Piller, V., Fox, R.I., Fukuda, M.; J. Biol. Chem. **263**: 15146 - 15150 (1988)

12) Larsen, E., Palabrica, T., Sajer, S., Gilbert, G.E., Wagner, D.D., Furie, B.C., Furie, B. Cell **63** : 467 - 474 (1990)

13) Fahrig, T., Schmitz, B., Weber, D., Kucherer-Ehret, A., Faissner, A., Schachner, M.; J. Neurosci. **2** : 153 - 161 (1990)

14) Eggens, I.; Fenderson, B.A., Toyokuni, T., Dean, B., Stroud, M.R., Hakomori, S.; J. Biol. Chem. **264** : 9476 - 9484 (1989)

15) Kojima, N., Hakomori, S.; J. Biol. Chem. **264** : 20159 - 20162 (1989)

16) Sugahara, K., Okumura, Y., Yamashina, I.; Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun. **162** : 189 - 197 (1989)

17) Renkonen, O., Makinen, P., Hard, K., Helin, J., Pentitila, L.; J. Biochem. Cell Biol. **66** : 449 - 453 (1988)

18) Paulsen, H.; Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl. **29** : 823 - 938 (1990)

19) Sharon, N., Lis, H.; Chem. Britain (July, **1990**) : 679 - 682 (1990)

20) Srivastava, G., Alton, G., Hindsgaul, O.; Carbohydr. Res. **207** : 259 - 276 (1990)

21) Paulsen, H.; Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl. **21** : 155 - 224 (1982)

22) Lemieux, R.U. and Driguez, H.; J. Am. Chem. Soc. **97** : 4069 - 4075 (1975)

23) Lemieux, R.U. and Haymi, J.I.; Can. J. Chem. **43** : 2162 -2173 (1965)

24) Lemieux, R.U., Hendriks, K.B., Stick, R.V. and James, J.; J. Am. Chem Soc. **97** : 4056 - 4062 (1975)

25) Gorin, P.A. and Perlin, A.S.; Can. J. Chem. **39** : 2474 - 2485 (1961)

26) Wulff, G. and Wichelhaus, J.; Chem. Ber. **114** : 2847 - 2853 (1974)

27) Igarashi, K.; Adv. Carbohydr. Chem. Biochem. **34** : 243 -283(1977)

28) Paulsen, H. and Lockhoff, O.; Chem. Ber. **114** : 3102 - 3114 (1981)

29) Garegg, P.J. and Ossowski, P.; Acta Chem. Scand. Ser. B **37** : 249 - 250 (1983)

30) Ogawa, T., Kitiyami, T. and Nukada, T.; Carbohydr. Res. **123** : C5 -C7 (1983)

31) Paulsen, H. and Lebhuhn, R.; Liebig Ann. Chem. : 1047 - 1072 (1983)

32) Paulsen, H., Heunne, M, Gyorgydecek, Z. and Lebhuhn, R.; Carbohydr. Res. **144**: 57 -70 (1985)

33) Srivastava, V.K. and Schuerch, C.; J. Org. Chem. **46** : 1121 - 1126 (1981)

34) Srivastava, V.K. and Scheurch, C.; Carbohydr. Res. **79** : C13 - C16 (1980)

35) Ekborg, G., Lindberg, B. and Lonngren, J.; Acta Chem. Scand. **26** : 3287 - 3292 (1972)

36) Warren, C.D., Auge, C., Laver, M.L., Suzuki S., Power D. and Jeanloz, R.W.; Carbohydr. Res. **82** : 71 - 83 (1980)

37) Auge, C., Warren, C.D. and Jeanloz, R.W.; Carbohydr. Res. **82** : 85 - 95 (1980)

38) Boren, H.B., Ekborg, G., Eklind, K., Garegg, P.J., Pilotti, A.,and Swahn, C.G.; Acta Chem. Scand. **27** : 2639 - 2644 (1973)

39) Petit, P., Jacquinet, J.C. and Sinay, P.; Carbohydr. Res. **82** : 130 -134 (1980)

40) Binkley, R.W. and Hehemann, D.G.; J. Org. Chem. **43**: 3244 - 3245 (1978)

41) Tsuchiya, T., Nakamura, F. and Umezawa, S.; Tetrahedron Lett. : 2805 - 2808 (1979)

42) Ranganathan, R. and Larwood, D.; Tetrahedron Lett. : 4341 - 4344 (1978)

43) Binkley, R.W. and Hehemann, D.H.; Carbohydr. Res. **74**: 337 - 340 (1979)

44) Binkley, R.W., Ambrose, M.G.; J. Carbohydr. Chem. **3** : 1 - 49 (1984)

45) Miljkovic, M., Gligorijevic, M. and Glisin, D.; J. Org. Chem. **39** : 3223 - 3226 (1974)

46) Ishido, Y. and Sakairi, N.; Carbohydr. Res. **97** : 151 -155 (1981)

47) David, S. and Fernandez-Mayoralas, A.; Carbohydr. Res. **165** : C11 - C13 (1987)

48) Alais, J., and David, S.; Carbohydr. Res. **201** : 69 - 77 (1990)

49) David, S., Malleron, A., and Dini, C.; Carbohydr. Res. **188** : 193 - 200 (1989)

50) Hagedorn, H.W. and Brossmer, R.; Helv. Chim. Acta **69** : 2127 - 2133 (1986)

51) Binkley, R.W. and Abdulazir, M.A.; J. Org. Chem. **52** : 4713 - 4717 (1987)

52) Binkley, R.W. and Sivik, M.R. J. Carbohydr. Chem. **5** : 647 - 670 (1986)

53) Binkley, R. and Sivik, M.R.; J. Org. Chem. **51** : 2619 - 2621(1986)

54) Thompson, A. and Wolfrom, M.L.; Methods Carbohydr. Chem. **2** : 215 - 220 (1963)

55) Ishido, Y., Sakairi, N., Skiya, M. and Nakazaki, N.; Carbohydr. Res. **97** : 51 - 79 (1981)

56) Neilson, T. and Werstiuk, E.S.; Can. J. Chem. **49** : 493 - 499 (1971)

57) T.W. Greene in "Protective Groups in Organic Chemistry" p. 300 John Wiley and Sons, New York. (1981)

58) Pinto, B.M., Reimer, K.B., Morissette, D.G., Bundle, D.R.; J. Org. Chem. **54** : 2650 - 2656 (1989)

59) Paulsen, H.; Methods Carbohydr. Chem. **6** : 142 - 149 (1972)

60) Hannessian, S.and Lavallee, P.; Can. J. Chem. **53** : 2975 - 2977 (1975)

61) Hannessian, S.and Lavallee, P.; Can. J. Chem. **55** : 562 - 565 (1976)

62) Corey, E.J. and Verkateswarhn, A.; J. Am. Chem. Soc. **94** : 6190 - 6191 (1972)

63) Kunz, H. and Guenther, W.; Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl. **27** : 1086 - 1087 (1988)

64) Guenther, W. and Kunz, H.; Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl. **29** : 1050 - 1051 (1990)

65) Hewitt, G. and Fletcher, W. G. Jr.; Methods Carbohydr. Chem. **2**: 307 - 308 (1963)

66) Roth, W. and Pigman, W.; J. Am. Chem. Soc. **82** ; 4608 - 4611 (1960)

67) Betaneli, V. I., Ouchimnikov, M.V., Bachinowsky, L.V. and Kochetkov, N.K.; Carbohydr. Res. **107** : 285 - 291 (1982)

68) Nashed, M.A. and Anderson, L.; Carbohydr. Res. **56** : 419 - 422 (1977)

69) Nashed, M.A. and Anderson, L.; Carbohydr. Res. **56** : 325 - 336 (1977)

70) David, S. and Hanessian, S.; Tetrahedron **41** : 643 - 663 (1985)

71) Iversen, T. and Bundle, D. R.; J.Chem.Soc. Chem. Commun. : 1240 - 1241 (1981)

72) Brimacombe, J. S.; Methods Carbohydr. Chem. **6** : 376 - 378 (1972)

73) Gautier, J.A. and Renault, J.; Compt. Rend. **225** : 682 - 684 (1947)

74) Sadozai, K.K., Nukada, T, Ito, Y., Nakahara, Y., Ogawa, T. and Kobata, A.; Carbohydr. Res. **157** : 101 - 123 (1986)

75) Iverson, T. and Bundle, D.R.; Carbohydr. Res. **103** : 29 - (1982)

76) Srivastava, O.P. and Hindsgaul, O.; J. Org. Chem. **52** : 2869 - 2875 (1987)

77) Garegg, P.J. and Norberg, T.; Acta Chem. Scand. **B33** : 116 - 118

78) Brown, H.C., McDaniel, D.H., Haefliger, O. "Determination of Organic Structures by Physical Methods" Volume 1: 590 (1963) J. Wiley and Sons, New York

79) Schmidt, O.T.; Methods Carbohydr. Chem. **2** : 320 - 321 (1962)

80) Wolfrom, M.L. and Thompson, A.; Methods Carbohydr. Chem. **2** : 211 - 214 (1963)

81) Schmidt, R.R. and Michel, J.; Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl. **19** : 731 - 732 (1980)

82) Garegg, P.J. and Hultberg, H.; Carbohydr. Res. **93** : C10 - C11 (1981)

83) Bock, K., Fernandez-Bolanos Garzman, J. and Norrestam, R.; Carbohydr. Res. **179** : 97 - 124 (1988)

84) Hayashi, M., Hashimoto, S. and Noyori, R.; Chem. Lett. :1747 - 1750 (1984)

85) Bessell, E.M., Foster, A.B., Westwood, J.H., Hall, L.D. and Johnson, R.N.; Carbohydr. Res. **19** : 39 - 48 (1971)

86) Nakahara, Y. and Ogawa, T.; Carbohydr. Res. **173** : 306 - 315 (1988)

87) Lundt, I. and Pedersen, C.; Acta. Chem. Scand., Ser. B **29**: 70 - 76 (1985)

88) Jacobsen, S., Nielsen, B. and Pedersen, C.; Acta. Chem. Scand., Ser. B **31** : 359 - 364 (1977)

89) Capon, B.; Chem. Rev. **69** : 407 - 498 (1969)

90) Bock, K. and Pedersen, C.; Acta Chem. Scand., Ser. B **29** : 682 - 686 (1975)

91) Wulff, G., Schroeder, U. and Schmidt, W.; Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl. **18** : 309 - 310 (1979)

92) Wulff, G., Schroeder, U. and Wichelhaus, J.; Carbohydr. Res. **72** : 280 - 284 (1979)

93) Sato, S., Ito, Y., Nukada, T., Nakahara, Y. and Ogawa, T.; Carbohydr. Res. **167** : 197 - 210 (1987)

94) Haines, S.R. and Posner, G.H.; Tetrahedron Lett. **26** : 5 - 8 (1985)

95) Sadozai, K.K., Nukada, T., Ito, Y., Nakahara, Y., Ogawa, T. and Kobata, A.; Carbohydr. Res. **157** : 101 - 123 (1986)

96) King, J.F. and Albutt, A.D.; Can. J. Chem. **48** : 1754 - 1769 (1970)

97) Griffith, M.H.E. and Hindsgaul, O.; Carbohydr. Res. **211** : 163 - 166 (1991)

98) Watanabe, K., Itoh, K., Araki, Y. and Ishido, Y.; Carbohydr. Res. **154** : 165 - 176 (1986)

99) Falent-Kwast, E., Kovac, P., Bax, A. and Glaudemans, C.P.J.; Carbohydr. Res. **145** : 332 - 340 (1986)

100) Roy, N. and Glaudemans, C.P.J.; Carbohydr. Res. **45** : 299 - 301 (1975)

101) Bhattacharjee, A.K., Zissis, E., and Glaudemans, C.P.J.; Carbohydr. Res. **89** : 249 - 254 (1981)

102) Garegg, P.J. and Kvarnstrom, I.; Acta Chem. Scand. Ser. B **30** : 655 - 658 (1976)

103) Sinay, P.; 15th International Carbohydrate Symposium PL-06, pg. 7 Yokohama, Japan. August, 1990.

104) Lowry, T.M., Faulkner, I.J.; J. Chem. Soc. **127** : 2883 - 2887 (1925)

105) Swain, C.G.; Am. Chem. Soc. J. **72** : 4578 - 4583 (1950)

106) Swain, C.G., Brown, J.F.; J. Am. Chem. Soc. **74** : 2534 - 2537 (1952)

107) Swain, C.G., Brown, J.F.; J. Am. Chem. Soc. **74** : 2538 - 2543 (1952)

108) Baer, H.H., Mateo, F.H., Siemsen, L.; Carbohydr. Res. **187** : 67 - 92 (1989)

109) Lemieux, R.U., Bundle, D.R., Baker, D.A.; J. Am. Chem. Soc. **97** : 4076 - 4083 (1975)

110) Nashed, M.A.; Carbohydr. Res. **71** : 299 - 304 (1979)

111) Jeanloz, R.W., Stoffyn, P.J.; Methods Carbohydr. Chem. **1** : 221 - 227 (1962)

112) Lemieux, R.U., Takeda, T. and Chung, B.Y.; Synthetic Methods for Carbohydrates. ACS Symp. Ser. **39** : 90 - 115 (1976)

113) Kaur, K.J. and Hindsgaul, O.; Glycoconjugate J. in press

114) Tahir, S.H. and Hindsgaul, O.; Can. J. Chem. **64** : 1771 - 1780 (1986)

115) Garegg, P.J., Hultberg, H.; Carbohydr. Res. **93** : C10 - C11 (1981)

116) Hanessian, S.; Methods Carbohydr. Chem. **6** : 183 - 189 (1972)

117) Jacobsen, S. and Mols, O.; Acta Chem. Scand. Ser. B **35** : 521 - 527 (1981)